



**STUDY OF RESERVOIR SEDIMENTATION, IMPACT  
ASSESSMENT AND DEVELOPMENT OF CATCHMENT AREA  
TREATMENT PLAN FOR KODAR RESERVOIR IN  
CHHATTISGARH STATE**

**PDS UNDER HYDROLOGY PROJECT PHASE-II**

**FINAL REPORT (2010-2013)**

**BY**  
**NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF HYDROLOGY**  
**REGIONAL CENTRE, BHOPAL (M.P.)**  
**&**  
**WATER RESOURCE DEPARTMENT, RAIPUR**  
**GOVT. OF CHHATTISGARH**

## **PDS Under HP-II**

### **STUDY OF RESERVOIR SEDIMENTATION, IMPACT ASSESSMENT AND DEVELOPMENT OF CATCHMENT AREA TREATMENT PLAN FOR KODAR RESERVOIR IN CHHATTISGARH STATE**

#### **Name of the Institutions:**

1. National Institute of Hydrology, Regional Centre, Bhopal (M. P.)
2. Water Resources Department, Govt. of Chhattisgarh, Raipur

#### **Study Group**

##### **1. National Institute of Hydrology, Regional Centre, Bhopal (M. P.)**

Sh. R.K. Jaiswal, Scientist-B (PI)  
Sh. Ravi Galkate, Scientist-D (Key Person)  
Sh. T. Thomas, Scientist-C  
Dr. Surjeet Singh, Scientist-C

##### **2. Water Resources Department, Govt. of Chhattisgarh, Raipur**

Sh. S. K. Awadhiya, Superintending Engineer (PI)  
Sh. D. K. Sonkusale, Deputy Director (Key Person)  
Sh. Akhilesh Verma, Executive Engineer  
Sh. R. K. Sharma, Sub Divisional Officer  
Sh. R. Chandrakar, Sub Engineer Engineer  
Sh. J. K. Dass, Sub Engineer

**Total Budget (Rs)** : WRD, Chhattisgarh : 22,26,000  
: NIH, RC, Sagar : 12,07,500  
**Total** : **34,33,500**

**(Rs. Thirty Four Lakh Thirty Three Thousand Five Hundred only)**

## **PREFACE**

The process of sedimentation in reservoir embodies the sequential processes of erosion, entrainment, transportation, deposition and compaction of sediment. The study of erosion and sediment yield from catchments is of utmost importance as the deposition of sediment in reservoir reduces its capacity, and thus affecting the water availability for the designated use. The assessment of present capacity of the reservoir will be helpful to determine the loss in capacity, the rate of sedimentation and its pattern, development of modified operation plan etc. In most of the water resources projects, the forested catchment area which is the source of endowment for reservoir is subjected to degradation due to lack of conservation measure and non-implementation of catchment area treatment plan. It is therefore necessary to understand the erosion processes with the help of sediment modeling in the catchment areas to identify the vulnerable areas and necessity and intensity of conservation measures. The scientific approach adopted using the appropriate methodologies for conservation natural resources in the catchment areas will be an innovation for tackling the problems of erosion from catchment, sedimentation of reservoir, non-availability of water in the tail reaches of the command areas and increase the efficiency of the project. The methodologies developed during the course of the study will be helpful in resolving similar type of issues in the state scientifically.

The Purpose driven Study (PDS) titled “Study of Reservoir Sedimentation, Impact Assessment and Development of Catchment Area Treatment Plan for Kodar Reservoir in Chhattisgarh State” has been awarded to WRD, Govt. of Chhattisgarh, Raipur and NIH, Regional Centre Sagar under HP II with the objectives of the present available capacity of reservoir, assessment of soil erosion and need of soil conservation measures, determination of priority areas for soil conservation measures, sediment modeling, development of catchment area treatment plan and impact assessment analysis will be of great help as environmental degradation in the project areas can be controlled and the life of the reservoir may be extended by the measures adopted on the basis of technical knowledge and scientific research. This study may be used as guidelines for planning soil conservation measures for sustainable development and reduction of environmental degradation in catchment areas of water resource projects in the region.

The final report prepared by Sri R. K. Jaiswal, Scientist-C as P.I. and Sh. Ravi Galkate, Scientist-D as Key Person, Sh. T. Thomas, Scientist-C as Co-PI and Dr. Surjeet Singh, Scientist-D as Co-PI from National Institute of Hydrology and Sh. S.V. Bhagwat, Superintending Engineer as PI, Sh. D. K. Sonkusale, Deputy Director as key Person, Sh. Akhilesh Verma, Executive Engineer, Sh. R. K. Sharma, Sub Divisional Officer, Sh. R. Chandrakar, Sub Engineer and Sh. J. K. Dass, Sub Engineer from Water Resources Department, Raipur (Chhattisgarh). The report is the results of three and half years research works conducted by both organizations for this PDS.

(R. D. Singh)  
Director

# CONTENTS

Item	Page No.
List of figures	i
List of tables	iii
Abstract	v
<b>CHAPTER 1: INTRODCUTION</b>	<b>1</b>
1.0 General	1
1.1 Soil Erosion	1
1.2 Reservoir Sedimentation	2
1.3 Soil Investigation	3
1.4 Watershed Prioritization	3
1.4.1 Analytical hierarchy process (AHP)	4
1.4.1.1 Steps of the analytical hierarchy process (AHP)	5
1.5 Catchment Area Treatment Plan	5
1.6 Sediment modeling	6
1.6.1 SWAT model	7
1.7 Objectives of PDS	8
<b>CHAPTER 2: REVIEW OF LITERATURE</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1 Reservoir Sedimentation Study	9
2.2 Development of Catchment Area Treatment Plan	9
2.3 Application of RS and GIS for Development of CAT Plan	10
2.3.1 Application of AHP for watershed prioritization	10
2.4 Soil Erosion and Sediment Modeling	11
2.5 Application of SWAT Model	12
<b>CHAPTER 3.0: STUDY AREA</b>	<b>14</b>
3.1 Kodar Reservoir	14
<b>CHAPTER 4.0: WORK ELEMENTS AND DATA USED</b>	<b>18</b>
4.1 Work Elements	18
4.2 Data Used	18
4.2.1 Meteorological data	18
4.2.2 Remote sensing data for sedimentation and landuse analysis	18
4.2.3 Collection of runoff and sediment data	19
4.2.3 Other information/data used	19
<b>CHAPTER 5.0: METHODOLOGY</b>	<b>20</b>
5.1 General	20
5.2 Creation of GIS Database	21
5.2.1 Integrated land and water information system (ILWIS)	21
5.2.2 Arc GIS	22
5.3 Collection and Analysis of Meteorological Data	23

5.4 Revised Capacity using Remote Sensing and GIS	24
5.5 Land Use Classification	25
5.6 Soil Investigation for Erosion and Sediment Modeling	25
5.6.1 Infiltration test	25
5.6.1.1 <i>Kostiakov's model</i>	26
5.6.1.2 <i>Modified Kostiakov's model</i>	26
5.6.1.3 <i>Horton's model</i>	27
5.6.1.4 <i>Philip two-term model</i>	27
5.6.2 Hydraulic conductivity	28
5.6.3 Particle size analysis	29
5.6.4 Apparent Specific Gravity	30
5.6.5 Dry density	30
5.7 Prioritization of Sub-Watersheds using Saaty's AHP	31
5.7.1 Consistency check	31
5.7.2 Priority assessment	32
5.7.3 Soil loss (SL) using USLE and RUSLE model	32
5.7.3.1 <i>Rainfall erosivity factor (R)</i>	33
5.7.3.2 <i>Soil erodibility factor (K)</i>	33
5.7.3.3 <i>Slope length factor (L)</i>	34
5.7.3.4 <i>Slope steepness factor (S)</i>	35
5.7.3.5 <i>Cover and management factor (C)</i>	35
5.7.3.6 <i>Support practice factor (P)</i>	36
5.7.4 Sediment production rate (SPR)	36
5.7.5 Sediment yield (SY)	37
5.7.6 Sediment transport index (STI) and Stream power index (SPI)	37
5.7.7 Average slope (SI)	38
5.7.8 Geomorphological parameters	38
5.7.8.1 <i>Drainage density (D<sub>d</sub>)</i>	38
5.7.8.2 <i>Channel frequency (C<sub>f</sub>)</i>	39
5.7.8.3 <i>Form factor (R<sub>f</sub>)</i>	39
5.7.8.4 <i>Circulatory ratio (R<sub>c</sub>)</i>	39
5.8 Development of Catchment Area Treatment (CAT) Plan	39
5.8.1 Mechanical measures	40
5.8.1.1 <i>Check dam</i>	40
5.8.1.2 <i>Gully plug</i>	40
5.8.1.3 <i>Boulder bund</i>	41
5.8.1.4 <i>Percolation tank</i>	41
5.8.1.5 <i>Farm pond</i>	41
5.8.1.6 <i>Bench terracing</i>	41
5.8.1.7 <i>Contour bunding</i>	42
5.8.1.8 <i>Graded bunding</i>	42
5.8.1.9 <i>Land leveling</i>	42
5.8.2 Agronomic measures	42
5.8.2.1 <i>Contour forming</i>	42

5.8.2.2 <i>Strip cropping</i>	43
5.8.2.3 <i>Contour strip cropping</i>	43
5.8.3.4 <i>Vegetative barriers</i>	43
5.8.3.5 <i>Grassed waterway</i>	43
5.8.3.6 <i>Mulching</i>	44
5.8.3.7 <i>Land preparation</i>	44
5.8.4 Biological measures	44
5.8.4.1 <i>Agroforestry</i>	44
5.8.4.2 <i>Grazing management</i>	44
5.8.4.3 <i>Afforestation</i>	45
5.8.4.4 <i>Reforestation</i>	45
5.8.5 Methodology for development of CAT plan	45
5.9 Design of Check Dams under CAT Plan	45
5.9.1 Design flood	49
5.9.2 Afflux	49
5.9.3 Upstream and downstream cutoff depth	50
5.9.4 Dam section	50
5.10 Application of SWAT Model	51
5.10.1 Preparation of Data Base for SWAT Model	51
5.10.2 Generation of Sub-basin and HRUs	52
5.10.3 Writing, Editing and Rewriting of SWAT input files	52
5.10.4 Sensitivity Analysis	53
5.10.5 Calibration of SWAT Model	53
5.10.6 Validation of SWAT Model	54
5.11 Impact Assessment Analysis	54
<b>CHAPTER 6.0: ANALYSIS OF RESULTS</b>	<b>56</b>
6.1 Creation of GIS Database	56
6.1.1 Drainage and road rail network map	56
6.1.2 Geology	57
6.1.3 Geomorphology	58
6.1.4 Soil map	59
6.1.5 Village map	60
6.1.6 Contour map	60
6.1.7 Digital elevation model (DEM) and shadow map	61
6.2 Up-gradation of Gauging and Sediment Sampling Site	61
6.3 Collection and Analysis of Meteorological Data	61
6.4 Sedimentation study of Kodar Reservoir	63
6.5 Land Use Classification	70
6.6 Results of Soil Investigation	71
6.6.1 Infiltration test	72
6.6.2 Hydraulic conductivity test	72
6.6.3 Particle size analysis	72
6.6.4 Dry density and sp. Gravity	77

6.7 Watershed Prioritization	77
6.7.1 Soil Loss Estimation using USLE and RUSLE models ( <i>SL</i> )	78
6.7.1.1 <i>USLE model</i>	78
6.7.1.2 <i>RUSLE model</i>	81
6.7.2 Estimation of sediment production rate (SPR)	84
6.7.3 Estimation of sediment yield ( <i>SY</i> )	86
6.7.4 Estimation of sediment transport index (STI) and sediment power index (SPI)	86
6.7.5 Estimation of average slope	86
6.7.6 Estimation of geomorphological parameters	86
6.7.7 Prioritization using Saaty's AHP	94
6.8 Development of CAT Plan	95
6.9 Design of Check Dams under CAT Plan	105
6.10 Application of SWAT Model	106
6.10.1 SWAT model up to Koma G/D site	106
6.10.1.1 <i>Sensitivity analysis</i>	107
6.10.1.2 <i>Calibration of SWAT model</i>	109
6.10.1.3 <i>Validation of SWAT model</i>	113
6.10.2 Application of SWAT model for Kodar reservoir catchment	113
6.11 Impact Assessment Analysis	115
<b>CHAPTER 7: CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b>	<b>120</b>
7.1 Conclusions	120
7.2 Feedback from Knowledge Dissemination Workshops	123
7.3 Recommendations	124
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>ACKNOWLEDGEMENT</b>	<b>134</b>
<b>PHOTOGRAPHS</b>	<b>135</b>

---

## List of Figures

<b>Fig. No.</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page No.</b>
3.1	Base map of Kodar reservoir in Chhattisgarh (India)	15
3.2	Original elevation-capacity curve of Kodar reservoir	17
5.1	Nomograph for determining the soil erodibility factor (USDA, 1978)	34
5.2	Sketch, x-section and other details of a check dam	48
6.1	Drainage and road-rail network in the study area	56
6.2	Geology of Kodar reservoir catchment	57
6.3	Geomorphology map of Kodar reservoir catchment	58
6.4	Soil map of Kodar reservoir catchment	59
6.5	Location map of villages in and around Kodar reservoir catchment	60
6.6	Contour map of Kadar reservoir catchment	61
6.7	Digital elevation model for Kodar reservoir catchment	62
6.8	Shadow map of the study area	62
6.9	Thiesen polygon for Kodar reservoir catchment	63
6.10	Variation of monthly maximum temperature, minimum temperature, relative humidity, wind speed	65
6.11	False color composite and extracted water spread on different dates for Kodar reservoir	67
6.12	Graph for computation of revised water spread area	68
6.13	Original and revised capacity curves of Kodar reservoir	69
6.14	Land use map of catchment of Kodar reservoir	70
6.15	Sites selected for detail soil testing in Kodar catchment	71
6.16	Infiltration curve for few sites in Kodar reservoir catchment	73
6.17	Observed and computed rate of infiltration from various models at few sites of Kodar reservoir catchment	75
6.18	Sub-watershed map of Kodar reservoir catchment	78
6.19	R, K, L, S, C & P-factor map and annual soil loss map for Kodar reservoir catchment using USLE model	80
6.20	Overland flow length (L) map of the study area	81
6.21	NDVI map and a graph between NDVI and C-factor	82
6.22	R, K, SL, C & P-factor map and annual soil loss map for Kodar reservoir catchment using RUSLE model	83
6.23	Spatial distribution of STI and SPI in Kodar reservoir catchment	89



6.24	Variation of STI and SPI in sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment	90
6.25	Slope map of Kodar catchment	90
6.26	Priority sub-watersheds in Kodar reservoir catchment using Saaty's AHP technique	99
6.27 (a)	Agronomic and biological measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment	101
6.27 (b)	Mechanical measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment	102
6.28	SWAT Model setup for Koma G/D site in Kodar reservoir catchment	107
6.29	Comparison of observed and computed discharge and sediment load at Koma G/D site during calibration	111
6.30	Scatter graph between observed and computed discharge and sediment load	112
6.31	Comparison of observed and computed discharge and sediment load at Koma G/D site during validation	114
6.32	SWAT model setup for Kodar catchment	115
6.33 (a)	Impact of soil and water conservation measures on runoff and sediment yield (Pre BMP and Post BMP) up to Koma G/D site	117
6.33 (b)	Impact of soil and water conservation measures on runoff and sediment yield (Pre BMP and Post BMP) for Kodar catchment	118
6.34	Bar chart showing monthly sediment load in t/ha/month from Koma G/D site and Kodar reservoir catchment (Pre & Post-BMP)	119

---

## List of Tables

<b>Table No.</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Page No.</b>
3.1	Salient features of Kodar reservoir	16
4.1	Data availability of rainfall in Kodar reservoir catchment	19
4.2	Details of satellite data used for the study	19
5.1	Radiometric characteristics of various bands of IRS 1D/P6 sensors	24
5.2	P-factor values for different land uses and slope	36
5.3	Criteria adopted in suggesting soil and water conservation measures	46
5.4	Some Best Management Practices for control of erosion	55
6.1	Distribution of geological features in Kodar catchment	57
6.2	Geomorphological features present in Kodar catchment	58
6.3	Soil types present in Kodar catchment	59
6.4	Seasonal and monthly statistics of rainfall for R.G. stations in Kodar catchment	64
6.5	Computation of revised volume in Kodar reservoir	68
6.6	Percentage loss in revised volume at different levels in Kodar reservoir	69
6.7	Different land uses in Kodar catchment	70
6.8	Name and location of soil testing sites in Kodar catchment	71
6.9	Parameters of various infiltration models	74
6.10	Performance evaluation of various infiltration models	74
6.11	Best fit infiltration rate models and their equations	76
6.12	Saturated hydraulic conductivity and other parameters in Kodar catchment	76
6.13	Soil texture of soils in Kodar reservoir catchment	76
6.14	Dry density and specific gravity of soils in Kodar catchment	77
6.15	Computation of R-factor for Kodar catchment	78
6.16	Soil type and their corresponding K-values in Kodar reservoir catchment	79
6.17	Land uses and their corresponding C and P-values in Kodar dam catchment	79
6.18	Computation of K-factor for soils in the study area	81
6.19	Soil loss under various classes in Kodar reservoir catchment	84
6.20	A matrix of slope class and soil loss for Kodar reservoir catchment	84
6.21	Computation of sediment production rate from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment	85
6.22	Computation of sediment yield from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment	87

6.23	Computation of drainage density and channel frequency for sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment	91
6.24	Comparison matrix for EHPs in Saaty's analysis	94
6.25	Computation of final weights for EHPs using Saaty's AHP technique	94
6.26	Computation of normalized values for EHPs and Final priority of sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment	96
6.27	Area under each priority in Kodar catchment	99
6.28 (a)	Agronomic and biological soil conservation measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment	103
6.28 (b)	Mechanical soil conservation measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment	105
6.29	Design details of check dams (CD-1 to CD-6) under CAT plan of Kodar catchment	106
6.30	Data for weather generator in SWAT model	108
6.31	Results of sensitivity analysis	109
6.32	Ranges and final values of SWAT model parameters selected during calibration	110
6.33	Parameters with their values in Pre-BMP and Post-BMP scenarios for Kodar basin	116

---

## **ABSTRACT**

The soil erosion, movement and deposition are part of natural hydrological processes, but the rate of sedimentation is accelerated due to environmental degradation, lack of conservation measures, change in land use, deforestation etc. The catchment area which is the source of endowment for any irrigation project is generally overlooked in most of the water resources projects cause reduction of useful storages, loss of nutrients, overtopping of reservoir and life of reservoirs. Reservoir surveys are necessary to get more realistic data/estimate regarding the rate of siltation and to provide reliable criteria for studying the implication of annual loss of storage over a definite period of time with particular reference to reduction of intended benefits in the form of irrigation potential, hydropower, flood absorption capacity and water supply for domestic and industrial uses etc; and periodic reallocation of available storage for various pool levels. The fast growing development and ignorance of catchment area treatment plan during and after implementation of project accelerating the rate of sedimentation and disturbing the ecological balance in reservoirs. While it is not possible to totally avoid or stop siltation, one way to reduce the siltation of the reservoirs is to implement scientifically designed catchment area treatment (CAT) plan that may enhance the life and efficiency of the project as well as the availability of water in command area. Chhattisgarh is one of the States which is included in the Hydrology Project Phase II. For the livelihood of the state, the irrigation projects and their working with the designed efficiencies, periodic assessment of reservoirs, conservation and treatment plan for catchment and modification in reservoir operation plan are essential. The Kodar reservoir which is constructed on river Kodar, a tributary of river Mahanadi has been selected for the systematic and scientific study of reservoir sedimentation, sediment yield from catchment areas, prioritization of catchment for soil conservation measures, sediment modeling in the inflowing rivers and impact assessment analysis of conservation measures on sedimentation under the PDS.

The identification of environmentally stressed areas, development of catchment area treatment (CAT) plan and rainfall-runoff- sediment modeling require to handle spatial data. Therefore, GIS based data base of the study area have been generated using ILWIS and Arc GIS software. The sedimentation study for the Kodar reservoir has been carried out using digital image processing technique of remote sensing data. The normalized deviation water index (NDWI), normalized deviation vegetation index (NDVI), image ratio (IR) and false color composite (FCC) have been used for identification of water pixels from rest of images. The sedimentation study showed that 24.94 Mm<sup>3</sup> of gross storages and 4.89 Mm<sup>3</sup> of dead storage have been lost in 32 years (1976-77 to 2008-09). The analysis of rainfall and other meteorological data have been carried out and data base have been created for sediment modeling. The land use map of Kodar catchment has been generated using supervised classification technique of LISS IV data. The Kodar catchment is primarily an agriculture watershed with dense forest on ridges only. The soil testing on 11 sites in the study area considering variation of soil type and land uses have been carried out for in-situ tests including infiltration rate, saturated hydraulic conductivity, field density and laboratory tests for textural analysis, nutrient analysis and sp. gravity etc. The soils in the study area are silty loam and sandy loam type with saturated hydraulic conductivity varies from 0.10 cm/hr to 88.95 cm/hr. The Kostikov and modified Kostikov models are found the most suitable to display the infiltration characteristics of soils in the catchment. The results of soil analysis in Kodar catchment have been used in prioritization, development of CAT plan and sediment modeling.

For identification of environmentally stressed sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment, Saaty's analytical hierarchical process (AHP) has been employed with participation of nine environmental hazardous parameters (EHPs) including soil loss using USLE/RUSLE model (*SL*), sediment production

rate (*SPR*), sediment yield (*SY*), sediment transport index or sediment power index (*STI* or *SPI*), slope (*SI*), drainage density ( $D_d$ ), channel frequency ( $C_f$ ), form factor ( $R_f$ ) and circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ). The Saaty's AHP is a structured technique for dealing with complex decisions involves building a hierarchy (Ranking) of decision elements and then making comparisons between each possible pair in each cluster (as a matrix). For prioritization and development of CAT plan, the Kodar catchment has been divided into sixty seven sub-watersheds. The soil loss in the Kodar catchment using RUSLE model indicated that sub-watershed SW-27 may be the least vulnerable produces minimum average soil loss of 0.51t/ha, while sub-watershed SW-44 should be considered on top priority with 73.21 t/ha annually. For estimation sediment yield (*SY*) from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment, a simple regression model based on rainfall, slope, land use and geomorphological parameters suggested by Kumar, 1985 and Rao & Mahabaleswara, 1990 has been used. The sediment transport index, sediment power index, average slope, drainage density ( $D_d$ ), channel frequency ( $C_f$ ), form factor ( $R_f$ ) and circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ) for all sub-watersheds have been computed with the help of sub-routine and other applications of ILWIS 3.7 software.

The weights obtained from Saaty's AHP and normalized values (varies between 0 and 1) of EHPs have been used to compute final priority of each sub-watershed in Kodar catchment. On the basis of final priority, all sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment has been grouped in five classes of priority namely very high, high, moderate, low and very low on the basis of priority ranking. From the Saaty's AHP analysis, the normalized priority for SW-44 has been computed as 0.74 and identified as the top most priority watershed. Similarly, SW-41 may be considered at the last in conservation works. The AHP analysis suggested that more than 21 sub-watersheds covering 117 sq. km area of Kodar reservoir catchment comes under very high and high priority and hence a scientifically developed CAT plan consisting mechanical, biological and agronomic measures should be implemented in these sub-watersheds on priority basis.

The scientifically developed catchment area treatment plan identifies environmentally stressed areas, necessity and intensity of mechanical and biological measures to arrest further soil erosion and conserve water with in the watershed. In the study, weighted overlay technique of various thematic maps including geology, geomorphology, soil, land use and drainage with some guiding principles have been used to identify suitable sites for mechanical measures and areas which can be brought under agronomic and biological measures of soil conservation. The CAT plan for Kodar catchment consists of 37 gully plugs, 22 nala plugs, 21 boulder bunds and 6 check dams under mechanical measures with 101.61 ha land for afforestation, 114.86 ha for agro-forestry and 11.41 ha land for development of grazing land under agronomic and biological measures. The proposed CAT plans consisting gram panchayat wise areas for specific soil conservation measure may be beneficial for local administration to take these works on priority basis

The Soil and Water Analysis Tool (SWAT) model has been employed for rainfall-runoff-sediment model and impact assessment of soil conservation measures under CAT plan on runoff and sediment regime in Kodar catchment. The SWAT model is a distributed parameter and continuous time simulation model designed to predict the impact of land management practices on water, sediment and agricultural chemical yields in large complex watersheds with varying soils, land use and management conditions over long periods of time. The SWAT model was first setup on river Kodar up to Koma G/D site where runoff and sediment data were collected during the period of PDS (2010-1012) for calibration and validation later extended to whole Kodar catchment. From the analysis of sensitivity simulation, it has been observed that the threshold depth of water in shallow aquifer (*GWQMN*) and Manning's N for main

channel (*CH\_N2*) is the most important from runoff and sediment modeling respectively. After manual changes in the sensitive parameters, rewritten of files and simulation run were carried out to determine computed runoff, sediment etc. from different sub-watersheds. The observed and computed values of runoff/sediment were compared using goodness of fit parameters including root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral square error (*ISE*), Nash-Sutcliffe efficiency, scatter plot and graphical representation.

After successful validation, the model parameters with suitable modification wherever required were implemented on whole Kodar catchment. The impact assessment analyses on runoff and sediment have been carried out by generating two different scenarios prior and after application of soil conservation measures as Pre-BMP and Post-BMP. The results indicated that maximum sediment load found in the month of Sept 2011 which was 2.97 t/ha under monthly rainfall of 743 mm in Kodar reservoir catchment during the period of implementation of model (2010 to 2012). If suitable soil conservation measures and BMP applied in the catchment, the sediment entry in the reservoir can be reduced to 1.63 t/ha under same rainfall condition. The BMP and CAT plan have little impact on runoff pattern from the catchments of Koma and Kodar reservoir, but able to reduce significantly the sediment transported through channels which otherwise deposited in Kodar reservoir if no measures were taken. The results of the study and methodology suggested in the PDS can beneficially be used in other water resources projects for reduction of useful storages, increase in water availability, social and economical development of weaker section of society and generation of employment through conservation measures. The proposed methodology can be used as guidelines for assessment of expected soil loss and suitable conservation measures for sustainable development in design of new water resource projects. During the course of PDS, extensive field visits were made and two knowledge dissemination workshops were organized to get feedback from stakeholders, government department, technocrats etc. Overwhelming response have been received during the interaction and need of regular estimation of reservoir revised capacities, development and implementation of scientifically designed CAT plan and awareness for soil and water conservation measures in mass were identified as the key issues for sustainable development of water resources.

## CHAPTER- 1 – INTRODUCTION

### 1.0 General

The catchment and contributing areas which are the source of endowment for any water resource projects are generally neglected and most of developmental activities concentrated in command areas resulting higher rate of soil erosion and sediment load, environmental degradation and inequitable development. Amongst several causes of soil erosion and loss of nutrients, the major ones are improper and unwise utilization of watershed resources without any proper vision, which is observed more in developing countries (FAO, 1985). Soil being one of the potential resources of an area demands proper conservation and management. It could be possible when its degree of degradation can be assessed and soil conservation strategies are to be planned according to the severity of soil erosion and environmental problems in the catchment of reservoir. An efficient catchment area treatment (CAT) plan consists of division of catchment in small watersheds, assignment the priority of conservation considering all important parameters responsible for soil erosion and degradation and finally the development of well planned conservation measures for different watersheds in the catchment. In order to plan soil conservation measures and to assess the impact of catchment area treatment plan, it is necessary to compute sediment transport from sub-watersheds, transport of sediment load to the reservoir and revised capacities of reservoir at regular interval.

### 1.1 Soil Erosion

The soil erosion may be defined as detachment and transportation of soil. It is a well-established fact that reservoirs formed by dams, weirs or barrages on rivers are subjected to sedimentation. The process of sedimentation embodies the sequential processes of erosion, entrainment, transportation, deposition and compaction of sediment. The study of erosion and sediment yield from catchments is of utmost importance as the deposition of sediment in reservoir reduces its capacity, and thus affecting the water availability for the designated use. The eroded sediment from catchment when deposited on streambeds and banks causes breaching of river reach. Land degradation due to soil erosion affects agriculture productivity, water quality and quantity, hydrological and environmental systems as various causing ecological imbalance and subsequent siltation and flood problems. According to a survey conducted by the Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) 174 million ha of India's total 329 million ha are affected by land degradation. A rough estimate of soil erosion and sedimentation for India reveals that about 5300 million tones of top soil are eroded annually and 24% of this quantity is carried by rivers as sediments and deposited in the sea, and nearly 10% is deposited in reservoirs reducing their storage capacity by 2%. The fertility status and the productivity of soil as a medium for biomass production depends largely on the top soil which, besides being a producer of biomass, is important for many other well-known important functions.

The soil erosion is globally recognized as a severe problem for human sustainability (Lal, 1998). Syriyaprasit & Shrestha (2008) emphasized that erosion may cause disasters such as siltation of reservoirs and flooding during rainfall events and shifts initial land suitability and capabilities. According to an estimate, a sixth of the world's soils are affected by water erosion, which has emerged as an issue for conservation efforts in 21<sup>st</sup> century (Walling and Fang, 2003 and Reich et al., 2000). A broad estimate of soil erosion nationwide showed that about 5334

million tones of soil is being lost every year in India, which means, soil erosion is taking place at the rate of 16.35 tones/hectare/year (Narayana and Ram Babu, 1983), which is more than the permissible soil loss tolerance value of 4.5 - 11.2 tones/hectare/year (Singh et al., 1981).

## **1.2 Reservoir Sedimentation**

It is a well-established fact that reservoirs formed by dams, weirs or barrages on rivers are subjected to sedimentation. The process of sedimentation embodies the sequential processes of erosion, entrainment, transportation, deposition and compaction of sediment. The study of erosion and sediment yield from catchments is of utmost importance as the deposition of sediment in reservoir reduces its capacity, and thus affecting the water availability for the designated use. The eroded sediment from catchment when deposited on streambeds and banks causes breaching of river reach. The removal of top fertile soil from catchment adversely affects the agricultural production. Negative effects of sedimentation tend to become more and more relevant on a global scale due to population growth, the increasing vulnerability of many territories, and more severe climatic conditions, which facilitate more and more soil erosion. Sedimentation can have major negative sociological, economic and environmental effects on water resources management which may include the following:

- Reduction of reservoir capacity due to the interception of river solid transport.
- Need for repeated dredging of waterways and ports.
- Increase of flooding risk produced by the bed aggradations.
- Potential collapse of structures along rivers subject to degradation.
- Erosion of beaches near the mouth of rivers with sediment depletion.
- Pollution of water bodies by sediment-borne contaminants and loss of nutrients.
- Reduction in infiltration rates and increase in tillage operation.

The conventional methods of reservoir sedimentation are time consuming, costly, cumbersome and require lot off manpower, therefore cannot be used frequently. But using the synoptic and repetitive viewing capacity of remote sensing sensors and the ability of image processing with Geographic Information System (GIS) makes this method economical, less time consuming and easy. The advantages of using remote sensing data are that it is highly cost effective, easy to use and requires lesser time in analysis as compared to conventional methods. The ability to map and estimate water spread from satellite data is well understood, and different techniques such as visual interpretation of satellite imagery, density slicing, and digital classification of water bodies have been employed for the delineation of water spread areas (i.e. Work and Gilmer, 1976, Thiruvengadachari et al, 1980; Jain and Goel, 1993, Goel and Jain, 1996, Jain and Kothiyari, 2000, Mukherjee et al, 2007, Jaiswal et al, 2008, Thomas et al, 2009).

In order to reduce the excessive entries of sediment and soil loss from catchment of reservoir, it is necessary to develop a scientifically designed catchment area treatment plan and application of best management practices for soil and water conservation. The development of CAT plan consists of identification stressed sub-watersheds and priority areas for soil conservation based on spatial analysis of different factors affecting soil erosion and selection of sites for different agriculture, biological and mechanical measures based on field information,



local available materials with involvement of society especially women and weaker section of society.

### **1.3 Soil Investigation**

The physical and chemical properties of soil play important role in movement of soil on and beneath the earth, erosion processes, recharge, pollutant transport, rainfall-runoff and sediment modeling etc. The process of soil erosion by water begins with the detachment of individual soil particles from the soil mass and other than raindrop impact depends on the physical and chemical properties of the soil. The texture, structure, water retention capability, etc. play an important role in determining whether the soil is susceptible to erosion by various agents of erosion or not. Soil texture is a soil property of very high importance. Sandy soil have higher infiltration rate, but are easily detached whereas clay soils cannot be detached easily but produce higher runoff rate and increased erosion. Silty soils and fine sands are most erodible since their resistance to both detachment and transportation are relatively low. The infiltration rate of the soil and the amount of runoff that results when infiltration capacity is exceeded are crucial for the rate of erosion. The extent of soil erosion results from the relationships between infiltration and runoff which is amongst others determined and modified by rainfall intensity, land cover and soil properties.

For the application of soil erosion and sediment model, spatial distributions of soil properties in the watershed are required. Different indices for determination of soil erodibility have been established and the most common is the soil erodibility factor ( $K$ ) in the Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) and Revised USLE. For estimation of  $K$ -value, percentage of silt and sand, soil structure and permeability of soil are the basic inputs. The displacement and movement of soil under the forces of water or air mainly depend upon cohesive forces between the particles of soil mass. It is therefore necessary to determine the physical and chemical soil properties through in-situ and laboratory tests for soil erosion studies, rainfall-runoff and sediment modeling, recharge analysis and pollutant transport etc. In the study, infiltration test using double ring infiltrometer, saturated hydraulic conductivity using Guelph permeameter, particle size analysis using sieve shaker and pipette analysis, specific gravity using density bottle and dry density using core cutter have been carried out and results of these analysis have been used in for soil erosion, sediment modeling and development of CAT plan for the study area.

### **1.4 Watershed Prioritization**

Comprehensive land development procedures attract special attention in many countries that enable soil and water conservation, better and productive land use and optimum and effective use of available natural resources. The severity is indicated by the priority delineation of a watershed that is determined considering many factors, the important among them being the annual soil loss, slope, sediment yield, sediment transport, erosivity, morphometric analysis etc. The prioritization of watershed helps in taking up soil conservation measures on the priority basis in which recent technology of Remote Sensing and Geographic Information System plays important role because of easy handling and manipulation of spatial information and data. The remotely sensed data has the advantage of providing synoptic view and large area coverage, which impart knowledge about conditions on the earth surface that change in landscape over time. GIS has held in making a number of useful suggestions for the development of the

watershed. It allows a variety of manipulation including map measurement, map overlay transformation, graphic design and database management.

The concept of soil and water conservation recognizes the inter-relationships between land use, soil and water and the linkage between uplands and downstream areas (Tideman, 1996). Soil and water conservation are key issues in watershed management in India behind demarcating the priority watersheds. To ensure optimum and sustainable development through scientific planning, the watershed requires an appraisal of agro-ecological characteristics, limitation and potential of resources for development. A watershed can be divided into number of sub-watershed to determine the limitation and potential of smaller areas in the watershed. A priority sub-watershed delineation survey carried out in the watershed indicates significant variation of natural resources and limitation. Watersheds have assumed importance for preserving the ecological balance between natural resource development and conservation, particularly in the fragile and heterogeneous erosion-susceptible hilly ecosystem. Decisions related to watershed management require scientific knowledge of resource information, slopes, expected sediment yield and priority class of watersheds for conservation planning. Comprehensive land development procedures attract special attention in many countries that enable soil and water conservation, better and productive land use and optimum and effective use of available natural resources.

In the present study, priority sub-watersheds for development of catchment area treatment area plan have been prepared using various erosion hazards parameters (*EHP*) factors responsible for soil degradation including soil loss using universal soil loss estimation (*USLE*) or revised *USLE* model, sediment yield (*Sy*), sediment production rate (*SPR*), sediment transport index (*STI*), slope (*Sl*), Drainage density (*D<sub>d</sub>*), channel frequency (*C<sub>f</sub>*), form factor (*R<sub>f</sub>*), circulatory ratio (*R<sub>c</sub>*). The Saaty's analytical hierarchy process (*AHP*) has been used for determination of weight of each factor for computation of final priority for each watershed in Kodar reservoir catchment. As the parameters considered for *AHP* analysis vary significantly, they need to be classified into a fixed range (generally between 0 and 1) called normalization of parameter. Using normalized factors and *AHP* weights of all parameters, final priority of each watershed can be determined for decision making process of soil conservation measures.

#### **1.4.1 Analytical hierarchy process (AHP)**

The analytical hierarchy process (*AHP*) is a structured technique for dealing with complex decisions. It involves building a hierarchy (ranking) of decision elements and then making comparisons between each possible pair in each cluster (as a matrix). This gives a weighting for each element within a cluster (or level of the hierarchy) and also a consistency ratio (useful for checking the consistency of the data). Based on mathematics and psychology, the *AHP* was developed by Thomas L. Saaty in the 1970s and has been extensively studied and refined since then. It provides a comprehensive and rational framework for structuring a decision problem, for representing and quantifying its elements, for relating those elements to overall goals, and for evaluating alternative solutions. *AHP* provides a proven, effective means to deal with complex decision making. Indeed, *AHP* allows a better, easier, and more efficient identification of selection criteria, their weighting and analysis. Thus, *AHP* reduces drastically the decision cycle.

AHP helps capture both subjective and objective evaluation measures, providing a useful mechanism for checking the consistency of the evaluation measures and alternatives suggested by the team thus reducing bias in decision making. AHP allows organizations to minimize common pitfalls of decision making process, such as lack of focus, planning, participation or ownership, which ultimately are costly distractions that can prevent teams from making the right choice. AHP is very useful when the decision-making process is complex, for instance, by being unstructured. Indeed, when the decision cycle involves taking into account a variety of multiple criteria which rating is based on a multiple-value choice, AHP splits the overall problem to solve into as many evaluations of lesser importance, while keeping at the same time their part in the global decision.

#### ***1.4.1.1 Steps of the analytical hierarchy process (AHP)***

##### **1. Decomposing**

The goal is to structure the problem into humanly-manageable sub-problems. To do so, iterating from top (the more general) to bottom (the more specific), split the problem, which is unstructured at this step, into sub-modules that will become sub-hierarchies. Navigating through the hierarchy from top to bottom, the AHP structure comprises goals (systematic branches and nodes), criteria (evaluation parameters) and alternative ratings (measuring the adequacy of the solution for the criterion). Each branch is then further divided into an appropriate level of detail. At the end, the iteration process transforms the unstructured problem into a manageable problem organized both vertically and horizontally under the form of a hierarchy of weighted criteria. By increasing the number of criteria, the importance of each criterion is thus diluted, which is compensated by assigning a weight to each criterion.

##### **2. Weighing**

Assign a relative weight to each criterion, based on its importance within the node to which it belongs. The sum of all the criteria belonging to a common direct parent criterion in the same hierarchy level must equal 100% or 1. A global priority is computed that quantifies the relative importance of a criterion within the overall decision model.

##### **3. Evaluating**

Score alternatives and compare each one to others. Using AHP, a relative score for each alternative is assigned to each leaf within the hierarchy, then to the branch the leaf belongs to, and so on, up to the top of the hierarchy, where an overall score is computed.

##### **4. Selecting**

Compare alternatives and select the one that best fits the requirements.

#### **1.5 Catchment Area Treatment Plan**

The catchment area of a basin consists of different land uses, slopes, drainage densities, conservation practices etc. Preparation of management plan for catchment requires to scientifically formulating the risk scenario in different part or sub-catchments in the basin. Under CAT, aspects, like land use-land cover, physiography and relief, area under different slope classes, and drainage pattern with details of tributary wise lengths and catchments are

incorporated. Further morphometric parameters are determined for sub-catchments and priorities are fixed on the basis of vulnerability. Watershed prioritization is an essential element in planning catchment area treatment. The direct drainage area, which is going to affect the reservoir and also get affected by the reservoir due to encroachment and sedimentation, should be studied and proper treatment policy for those areas should be developed. The watershed management for conservation of important natural resources like soil and water may be the key of success for any CAT plan in which involvement of local population and their demands for food, fiber and fodder should be met with in the watershed.

The catchment area treatment (CAT) plan pertains to preparation of a management plan for treatment of erosion prone area of the catchment through biological and mechanical measures. However, a comprehensive CAT plan should also include the social dimensions associated directly or indirectly with the catchment. Land and water resources management must ensure that vital ecosystems are maintained and that adverse effects on other natural resources are considered and where possible reduced when development and management decisions are made. A well-designed CAT plan should not only control the sedimentation of reservoir but should also provide a life support system to the local population through their active involvement. An effective CAT plan of a water resources project is a key factor to make the project eco-friendly and sustainable. The CAT plan for any water resources deals with identification of different types of soil erosion, mechanics, quantification, identification of erosion prone areas, priority fixation, development of scientific plan and assessment of impact of management plan.

For CAT studies, the sub-watersheds can be prioritized on the basis of slope, geomorphic characteristics, soil erosion and sediment yields, land use/land cover etc. In the prioritization studies, the GIS may be considered as the most effective and viable tool for considering the interaction between the spatially distributed resources. The number of useful combinations of the data via overlay analysis can be generated and '*integrated resources units (IRU)*' can be created. These IRUs have the information of various factors responsible for soil erosion and other environmental hazards. Some decision rules are framed and on the basis of these rules each IRU is given a weight and according to that weight and accordingly, the priority, conservation measures and separate CAT plan for those sub-watersheds are developed. In the construction of the decision-rules, the multi-disciplinary expertise, the knowledge of the local terrain parameters and field observations are taken into consideration.

## **1.6 Sediment modeling**

The hydrologic behaviors of watershed play an important role in its effective management (Shin-Min et al. 2002). Commonly used agricultural watershed models for sediment modeling include AGNPS (Young et al. 1989), ANSWERS (Beasley et al. 1980), MIKE SHE (Xevi et al. 1997), and WEPP (Ghidey and Alberts 1996). Models for generation of sediment from catchment and transport of water and sediment flux in rivers can be classified as in the following groups.

- Process-based hydrodynamic sediment transport model such as HEC-6, SED2D, GSTAR-1D, etc.
- Lumped routing model such as in SWIM, SWAT, ANSWER etc using the Muskingum routing method for water with a sediment delivery ratio.
- Neural network approach.

HEC-6 (Hydrologic Engineering Center) model is a hydrodynamic, one-dimensional open channel flow and sediment-transport model designed by the US Army Corps of Engineers to simulate changes in river profiles due to erosion and deposition over long time periods or for single event. The GSTAR-1D (Generalized Sediment Transport for Alluvial River) model is a one dimensional river model developed by the Environmental Protection Agency and Bureau of Reclamation. In the present study, Soil and Water Analysis Tool (SWAT) will be used for runoff and sediment modeling from the Kodar catchment and described here.

### **1.6.1 SWAT model**

The Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) model (Arnold et al., 1998) is a distributed parameter and continuous time simulation model supported by USDA Agricultural Research Service at the Grassland, Soil and Water Research Laboratory, Texas. The SWAT model has been developed to predict the response to natural inputs as well as the manmade interventions on water and sediment yields in un-gauged catchments. The model (a) is physically based; (b) uses readily available inputs; (c) is computationally efficient to operate and (d) is continuous time and capable of simulating long periods for computing the effects of management changes. The major advantage of the SWAT model is that unlike the other conventional conceptual simulation models it does not require much calibration and therefore can be used on un-gauged watersheds (in fact the usual situation).

SWAT model has been designed to predict the impact of land management practices on water, sediment and agricultural chemical yields in large complex watersheds with varying soils, land use and management conditions over long periods of time. SWAT is a continuous time model operating on daily time step and sub-daily time scale. The equations in SWAT focuses on soil water balance. SWAT simulates the water balance, along with plant growth, sediment erosion and transport, nutrient dynamics, and pesticides. The details of SWAT model including its capabilities, application, data required, data format is available in Neitsch, 2001. The runoff volume in SWAT model is estimated by Soil Conservation Services (SCS) curve number technique (USDA, 1972) and sediment yield using Modified Universal Soil Loss Equation (MUSLE) (Williams and Berndt, 1977). The model permits the incorporation of management practices on the land surface, including fertilizer application, livestock grazing, and harvesting operations. The sub-basin components of SWAT can be placed into eight major divisions—hydrology, weather, sedimentation, soil temperature, crop growth, nutrients, pesticides, and agricultural management (Dhar & Majumdar, 2006).

- Hydrology - Surface runoff, Percolation, Lateral Subsurface Flow, Groundwater Flow, Evapotranspiration, Snow melt and Transmission Losses
- Weather - Precipitation, Air Temperature, Solar Radiation, Wind Speed and Relative humidity.
- Sedimentation - Sediment Yield.
- Soil temperature - Daily average soil temperature is simulated at the center of each soil layer for use in hydrology and residue decay.
- Crop growth
- Nutrients - Nitrogen and Phosphorus

- Pesticides - Gleams technology for simulating pesticide transport by runoff, percolate, soil evaporation and sediment was added to SWAT.
- Agricultural Management - Tillage and residue management and Irrigation.
- Routing component - Channel flood routing, Channel sediment routing, Channel nutrient and pesticide routing, Reservoir Routing, Reservoir water balance and routing, Reservoir sediment routing, Reservoir nutrient and pesticides.

The basic inputs for most of the deterministic and empirical soil erosion and sediment models are topographical features, land uses and management practices and soil properties. The topography of the catchment can be derived from contour maps and toposheets, landuse map either can be collected from local authority or can be derived from remote sensing data. The soil properties play an important role in the removal and transportation of soil particles from their original position and deposition in somewhere else either in the plane area of catchment, goes out of catchment or deposited in the reservoir within or at the outlet of the catchment. The detail soil investigation on eleven sites of Kodar reservoir catchment has been conducted to determine the soil properties related to erosion and hydrological processes.

### **1.7 Objectives of the PDS**

Chhattisgarh is one of the States which is included in the Hydrology Project Phase II. For the livelihood of the state, the irrigation projects and their working with the designed efficiencies, periodic assessment of reservoirs, conservation and treatment plan for catchment and modification in reservoir operation plan are essential. The Kodar reservoir which is constructed on river Kodar, a tributary of river Mahanadi has been selected for the systematic and scientific study of reservoir sedimentation, sediment yield from catchment areas, prioritization of catchment for soil conservation measures, sediment modeling in the inflowing rivers and analysis of change in land use on erosion and sedimentation, etc. The remotely sensed data has the advantage of providing synoptic view and large area coverage, which impart knowledge about conditions on the earth surface that change in landscape over time. GIS has held in making a number of useful suggestions for the development of the watershed. It allows as variety of manipulation including map measurement, map overlay transformation, graphic design and database management. The scientific approach adopted using the appropriate methodologies for conservation of the most important natural resource i.e. soil in the catchment areas will be an innovation for tackling the problems of high erosion and sedimentation of reservoir, non-availability of water in the tail reaches of the command areas and increase the efficiency of the project. The following are the objectives of the present study.

- Assessment of present status of reservoir storage by estimating revised capacity using remote sensing approach.
- Sediment modeling.
- Assessment of soil loss from catchment area.
- Prioritization of catchment area based on geomorphological characteristics, sediment yield and risk of erosion and soil loss from sub-catchments.
- Impact assessment analysis
- Development of management plan for catchment area with area specific soil conservation measures for minimizing sedimentation in reservoir.

## **CHAPTER 2.0 – REVIEW OF LITERATURE**

### **2.1 Reservoir Sedimentation Study**

Reservoir sedimentation process is a universal phenomenon, which has been considered as a most critical environmental hazard of modern time (Jain and Kothiyari, 2000). The range of problems caused by reservoir sedimentation is varied and wide. Apart from loss of capacity, increased flood risks, interruption in hydropower generation and downstream river bed degradation; other problems such as degradation of water quality, increased complexity in reservoir operation and maintenance lead to increase in their associated cost (Kothiyari et al., 2002; Siyam et al., 2005). White (1978) examined a variety of measuring techniques for determining reservoir surface areas extracted from Landsat MSS near-IR imageries of different scales and compared their accuracy with field data. He concluded that none of the measuring techniques used was able to measure the reservoir water spread with consistent accuracy and no reason was attributed. Mangond et al (1985) employed digital classification techniques to estimate the water spread of the Malaprabha reservoir using Landsat MSS data and reported a discrepancy of 8.29 % from the actual water spread. This discrepancy was attributed to the probable misclassification of boundary pixels. Suvit et al (1988) used digital techniques in which density slicing of Landsat MSS near-IR (0.8- 1.1  $\mu\text{m}$ ) data were used to extract the water spreads of the Ubolratana reservoir of five different dates. The ability to map and estimate water spread from satellite data is well understood, and different techniques such as visual interpretation of satellite imagery, density slicing, and digital classification of water bodies have been employed for the delineation of water bodies (i.e. Work and Gilmer, 1976, Thiruvengadachari et al, 1980; Jain and Goel, 1993, Goel and Jain, 1996, Jain and Kothiyari, 2000, Jaiswal et al, 2008, Thomas et al 2009).

### **2.2 Development of Catchment Area Treatment Plan**

Drainage basins, catchments and sub-catchments are the fundamental units for the management of land and water resources (Moore et al., 1994). Catchments have been identified as the planning units for administrative purpose to conserve these precious resources (FAO, 1985; 1987; Honore, 1999; Khan, 1999). The development of CAT plans includes the identification of environmentally stressed sub-watershed, suggestions of suitable measures of soil and water conservation, society involvement for protection and production of resources and make the region self sustainable and ultimately creating the environment for overall development of society. Tyagi and Joshi (1994) developed catchment area treatment plan for Himalayan region and suggested contour bunding, graded bunding, bench terracing, strip cropping and mixed cropping for soil conservation. Tyagi and others (1994) have described erosion conservation measures for the Himalayan region. Measures include contour bunding, graded bunding, bench terracing, strip cropping, contouring and mixed cropping. Pandey et al. (2007) divided Karso watershed of Hazaribagh, Jharkhand (India) into  $200 \times 200$  m grid cells and average annual sediment yields were estimated for each cell of the watershed to identify the critically prone areas of watershed for development of CAT plan.

## **2.3 Application of RS and GIS for Development of CAT Plan**

Remote Sensing and Geographical System (GIS) are useful in the field of CAT development and prioritization of sub-watersheds by coupling spatial information on various soil erosion parameters and natural resource conservation. The remotely sensed data has the advantage of providing synoptic view and large area coverage, which impart knowledge about conditions on the earth surface that change in landscape over time. Mohan *et al.* (1999) has prepared an action plan for the development of water resources using information obtained from remote sensing and other collateral sources on slope, land cover, terrain characteristics and hydro-geomorphology and drainage characteristics. . Prakasam *et al.* (2010) used remote sensing and Geographic Information System (GIS) for generation of tribal area development planning of Chintapalli block of Visakhapatnam district, Andhra Pradesh State. Yassir (2010) used the remote sensing and GIS techniques for the Asifabad and Wankadi Taluks, parts of Adilabad district of Andhra Pradesh, India. A special emphasis is laid on the development of action plan for land and water resources management mainly based on the land use/ land, cover, geomorphology and slope of the area. Kushwaha *et al.* (2010) demonstrated the application of remote sensing, GIS and GPS for preparation of sustainable land and water resources development action plans for Pathri Rao sub watershed in Haridwar district of Uttarakhand. Walia *et al.* (2010) used satellite imagery and Survey of India toposheets to generate several layers of maps such as watershed boundary, drainage, soils, land use and land cover, physiography, slope and soil erosion of Moolbari watershed using Geographic Information System technique GIS has held in making a number of useful suggestions for the development of the watershed. Recent studies revealed that RS and GIS techniques are of great use in characterization and prioritization of watershed areas (Pandey *et al.*, 2007; Yoshino and Ishioka, 2005; Chowdary *et al.*, 2004; Sharma *et al.*, 2001; Khan *et al.*, 2001; Sidhu *et al.*, 1998).

### **2.3.1 Application of AHP for watershed prioritization**

AHP is one of the comprehensive systems for Multiple Attribute Decision Making, because this technique can create formulation of problems according to hierarchies. Abilities and characters of this process has caused, take best results for natural phenomenon research because majority of natural phenomenon have different effective factors, complicate and especially quality. This process can help to create a model for sustainable management of nature (Meimariani, 1996). The AHP has been used for determine of flash flood peak and selection of the best flood frequency distribution in Boshehr Basin (Amiri *et al.*, 2006). A local model of soil mass movement hazard in Talghan watershed basin using AHP has shown accuracy and correctness of it in the ranking of multiple problems (Ahmadi *et al.*, 2006). This method compared and ranked better variety of wheat seed effectiveness index and observed the accordable ability for analytical of decision problems (Memarini, 1992). Shrestha *et al.* 2004 analyzed the prospects and challenges for silvipasture adaptation in south-central Florida using the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats approach in combination with analytic hierarchy process and found its profitable efficiency in quality factors. Ariapour *et al.* 2008 used Saaty's AHP for sustainable management of marginal land and land use practices.



## 2.4 Soil Erosion and Sediment Modeling

For prioritization of watersheds and development of catchment area treatment plan, soil erosion has been considered the most important criteria and several authors have dealt the theory of soil erosion and sedimentation in rivers. Musgrave (1947) suggested one of the earliest and most successful equations for sediment yield. He accounted for soil erodibility, vegetal cover, land slope, channel length and rainfall intensity. Work in the early 1930's through 1960's led to the development of Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) by W. H. Wischmeier and first published in 1958 (USDA Agriculture Handbook 282). Over the next 20 years he refined and improved the USLE and published the results of his efforts in 1978 in Agriculture Handbook 537, which is still a standard reference. The planners and managers sometimes more interested to know the spatial distribution of soil erosion rather than absolute values and in such cases, the use of remote sensing and geographic information system (GIS) makes soil erosion estimation and its spatial distribution feasible with reasonable costs and better accuracy in larger areas (Millward and Mersey, 2001 and Wang et al, 2003).

After invention of USLE model, Several scientist many models for soil loss estimation have been developed by Nearing et al. (1989); Adinarayana et al. (1999); D'Ambrasio et al. (2000); Veihe et al. (2001) Shen et al. (2003). Empirical soil erosion models in combination with soil, climate, vegetation and topography information have been implemented using remote sensing (Dwivedi et al., 1997; Hill and Scutt, 2002; Babun and Yusuf, 2001; Fu et al., 2005). Coupling GIS and USLE/RUSLE has been shown in many cases to be an effective approach for estimating the magnitude of soil loss and identifying spatial locations vulnerable to soil erosion (Fu et al., 2006; Lim et al., 2005). The GIS tool for classification of Landsat-TM imagery has been used to estimate the crop management factor for USLE is in the research done by Millward and Mersy (1999); Zhang (1999). De Jong (1994) has shown that satellite data can be used for producing vegetation related factors in soil erosion modeling that again compiled by Leprieur et al. (2000). The normalized difference vegetation index (NDVI) was found the most useful for computation of K factor by Symeonakis and Drake (2004) and Tateishi et al. (2004).

Joglekar (1965) and Varshney (1975) have suggested a number of enveloping curves for the prediction of sediment yield for different catchment areas in India. Correlation studies conducted by Jose et al (1982) revealed that area alone does not have any significant association with sediment production rate and hence it calls for multivariate analysis involving a number of climatic and physiographic parameters. Mishra et al (1991) and Bundela et al (1995) have developed statistical models on a spatial basis for small watersheds in river Damodar. Nema et al (1978) worked out some parameters of Universal Soil Loss Equation from runoff plot study conducted at Soil Conservation Demonstration and Training Centre (ICAR), Vasad. Values for 'K' factor and 'R' factor for soil and climatic conditions at Vasad and 'C' factor for Mung, Groundnut and Cowpea were worked out. Prasad and others (1994) have reported soil conservation measures in a semi arid region of Rajasthan.

Ram Babu et al (1978) computed and presented the monthly, seasonal and annual erosion index values for 44 stations situated in northern, central, western, eastern and southern rainfall zones of India. Raghuwanshi and Bhatia (1987) applied the Universal Soil Loss Equation for predicting soil loss from Chaukhutia catchment of Ramganga river in Uttar Pradesh. Singh et. al. (1981) and Narayana (1983) have estimated the soil erosion due to water and wind for India and

presented the same as contour lines on the map of India. Soil loss data from various research stations, watersheds, and sedimentation of reservoirs also were used. Soil losses for a number of places were estimated using the universal soil loss equation. Based on these 21 observed and 64 estimated soil loss data points spread over different land resource regions of the country and superimposing eight above-mentioned maps, iso-erosion rate lines were drawn. They have analyzed that the annual erosion rate due to water is less than 5 Mg/ha/yr (2.2 tons/acre) for dense forest (above 40% canopy), cold desert regions, and arid regions of India. Narain and others (1993) have mapped erosion quantitatively in East Bengal and estimated the rate of erosion between 0.0 and 5.0 t/ha/year. Jain (1995) combined USLE with ILWS GIS for prediction of soil loss in a part of Banjar sub-basin of Narmada basin. A statistically significant spatial model was developed by Rao et al (1996) to estimate sediment yield in Chenab basin using geomorphologic, climatic and land use/land cover parameters. The study also reveals the high rates of sedimentation in Chenab basin and its effect on existing Salal dam near Jammu.

Work on the process-based Water Erosion Prediction Project (WEPP) model began in 1985 at USDA-ARS (United States Department of Agriculture - Agricultural Research Service), National Soil Erosion Research Laboratory (NSERL), West Lafayette, Indiana. Expansion of the WEPP program to allow simulation of small watersheds began in 1991. Many of the channel routing routines in the CREAMS (Knisel, 1980) model were directly used within WEPP, and modified and improved as necessary (Ascough et al., 1995; Ascough et al., 1997; Baffaut et al., 1997). A new component to predict sediment deposition in impoundments was also developed (Lindley et al., 1995). WEPP is a continuous time model uses either observed or generated climatic inputs to drive the runoff and erosion processes. The CLIGEN (Nicks et al., 1995) weather generator was developed specifically to create daily climate inputs for WEPP, based upon long term weather station statistics. Critical components of WEPP are the infiltration and runoff computations. A Green-Ampt Mein-Larson model (Mein and Larson, 1973) as modified for unsteady rainfall (Chu, 1978) is used to predict the cumulative infiltration depth. Depression storage is estimated as a function of random roughness and slope steepness (Onstad, 1984). Runoff is the total rainfall excess minus any reduction due to the surface depression storage (Stone et al., 1995).

Neural network is a tool for nonlinear input-output mapping, which consists of a system of interconnected layers of hidden units commonly called neurons. A neural network is constructed to obtain a prediction of system response without attempting to reach an understanding of or provide insight into the nature of the involved processes, i.e. it is a black-box model. In a study, Abrahart and White (2001) have presented the applicability of neural networks to the modeling of sediment transfer in dry land catchments. Selection of approach of modeling between simple, linear regression or lumped model types and process-based, parameter-intensive models depends upon objectives of the study and data availability.

## **2.5 Application of SWAT Model**

SWAT has been applied throughout the United States by USDA and others in different part of globe successfully for rainfall-runoff modeling, sediment and erosional studies, point and non point pollution, water quality, watershed priority and conservation measures and development of best management practices in large and small basins (Engel et al. 1993; Bingner 1996; Arnold et al. 1998, 1999; Peterson and Hamlett 1998; Srinivasan et al. 1998; Munguerra

and Engle, 1998; Saleh et al. 2000; Neitsch et al. 2001; Santhi et al. 2001; Weber et al 2001; Fohrer et al. 2001; Tripathi et. al., 2004; Arnold and Fohrer 2005; Santhi et al. 2006, etc.). Fohrer et al. (1999) have successfully calibrated and validated the SWAT on 'Aar' gauged watershed using the land use map derived from satellite images. Srinivasan et al. (1998) calibrated the SWAT model for a sub-watershed (Mill Creek watershed) of Richland-Chambers (RC) lake using the sediment data from 1988 to 1994 and concluded the variation of 2 to 9 % in accumulated sediment. Pikounis et al (2003) investigated the hydrological effects of specific land use changes in a catchment of the river Pinios in Thessaly (Ali Efenti catchment), through the application of the SWAT model on a monthly time step. Behera and Panda (2006) used SWAT model for the evaluation of management alternatives for a small agricultural watershed (Kapagri watershed) of eastern India. Pandey et al (2008) applied AVSWAT model for identification of critical sub-watersheds and development of best management practices in a watershed of eastern India and reported that the conservation tillage practice may be the best as for sediment yield point of view.

Both the SWAT (Soil & Water Assessment Tool) and the SWIM (Soil and Water Integrated Model) models are river basin scale models that quantify water and sediment-transport processes for the hill slopes, the catchments and for the river network. The SWAT was developed by the USDA Agricultural Research Service (Neitsch et al. 2002) to quantify the impact of land management practices in large, complex watersheds. The SWAT model estimates runoff volume by using the Soil Conservation Service (SCS) curve number technique (USDA-SCS, 1972). Erosion and sediment yield are estimated for each sub-basin with the Modified Universal Soil Loss Equation (MUSLE) (Williams and Berndt, 1977). SWAT uses Manning's equation to define the rate and velocity of flow. Water is routed through the river network using the variable storage routing method or the Muskingum routing method. The sediment delivery ratio is estimated using a power function of the peak flow velocity. Erosion is estimated as a function of the sediment delivery ratio, the channel erodibility factor (similar to the soil erodibility factor K used in the USLE equation) and a channel cover factor (similar to the soil factor C in the USLE equation). The SWIM model was developed by Krysanova and Wechsung (2000) at the Potsdam Institute for Climate Impact Research, Germany. The model uses a very similar approach to flow and sediment routing in comparison to the SWAT model.

## CHAPTER 3.0: STUDY AREA

The Kodar reservoir which is constructed on river Kodar, a tributary of river Mahanadi has been selected for the systematic and scientific study of reservoir sedimentation, sediment yield from catchment areas, prioritization of catchment for soil conservation measures, sediment modeling in the inflowing rivers and analysis of change in land use on erosion and sedimentation.

### 3.1 Kodar Reservoir

The Kodar reservoir is constructed across river Kodar, a tributary of river Mahanadi. The dam is constructed on Raipur – Sambalpur national highway at a distance of 65 km from Raipur near village Kowajhar in Mahasamund district. The base map showing location of Kodar reservoir has been given in Fig 3.1. The catchment area of the river up to dam site is 317.17 km<sup>2</sup>. and mean annual rainfall in the catchment area is about 1433.1 mm. The dead storage capacity and gross storage capacity of reservoir are 11.33 Mm<sup>3</sup> and 160.35 Mm<sup>3</sup> respectively.

The length of earthen dam is 2363 m with a maximum height of 23.32 m, a waste weir 183m long to pass designed flood and head regulators on both the flanks to feed the canal system. Two canals of length 23.30 km (Left Bank Canal) and 10.60 km (Right Bank Canal) are envisaged from the sluices located on left and right flanks of the earthen dam to provide irrigation to 16,066 ha and 7,406 ha respectively. The reservoir was first impounded in the year 1976-77 and now it is necessary to revise original elevation-area-capacity table for efficient management of available water. The topography of the catchment area of Kodar river is undulating and agriculture area is more from where soil loss is more due to lack of conservation measures, therefore the erosion from the catchment and rate of sedimentation in the reservoir may be more than the designed rate. The salient features of Kodar reservoir have been presented in Table 3.1. The original elevation capacity table of Kodar reservoir has been presented in Table 3.2 and elevation capacity curve in Fig 3.2.

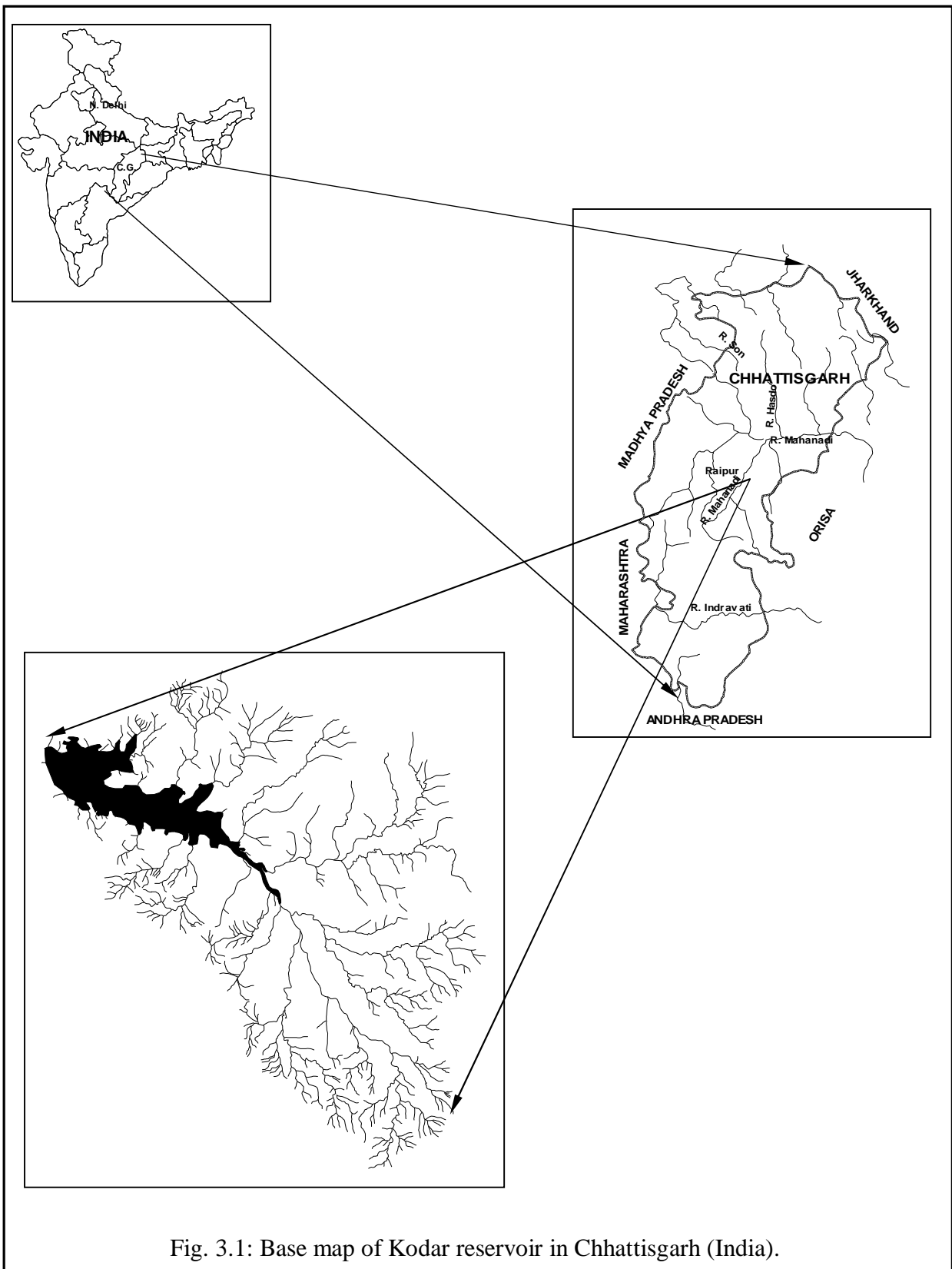
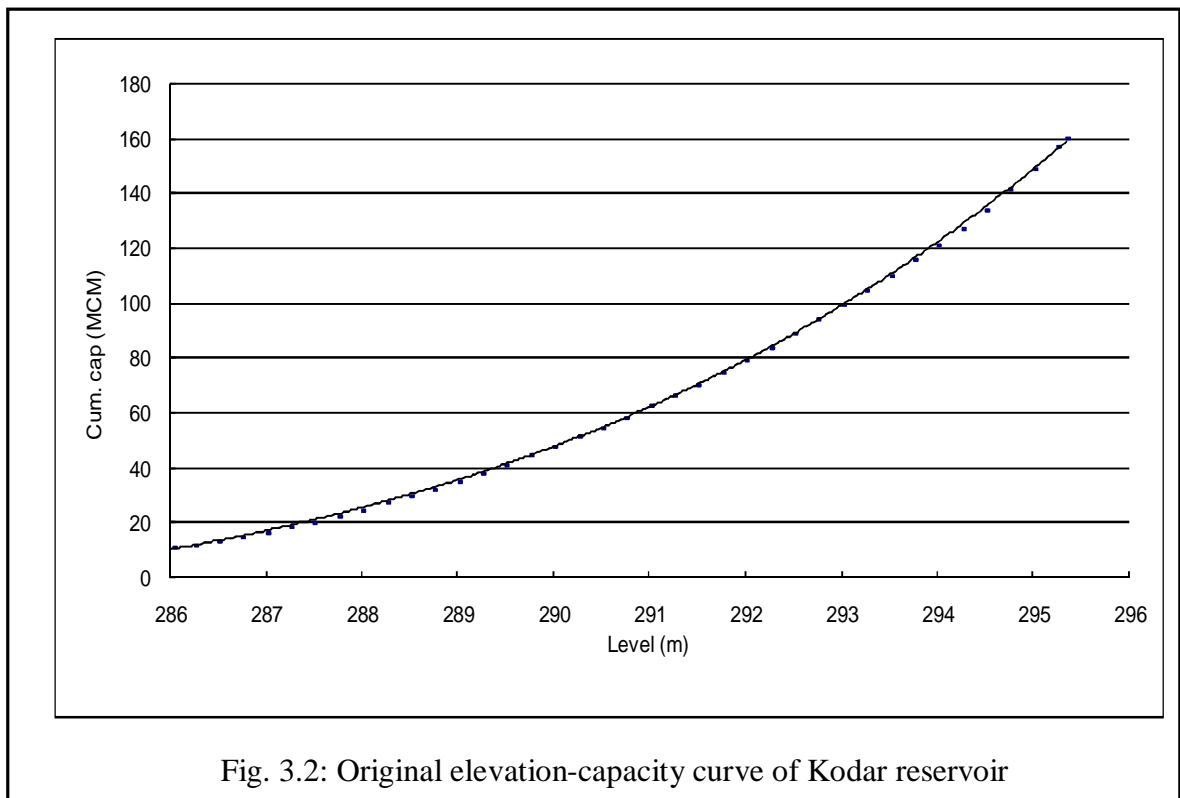


Table 3.1: Salient features of Kodar reservoir

<b>I.</b>	<b>GENERAL DATA</b>	
1	District	Raipur
2	Tahsil	Mahasamund
3	River	Kodar
4	Location	Near village Kowajhar Latitude : 21 <sup>0</sup> 11' 50" N Longitude : 82 <sup>0</sup> 10' 40" E
5	Name of River Basin	Mahanadi Basin
6	Year of start	1976-77
<b>II.</b>	<b>HYDROLOGICAL DATA</b>	
1.	Mean rainfall (over 43 year since 1934 to 1976 of Mahasamund)	
	a) Annual Rainfall	1433.1 mm
	b) 75% dependable rainfall	1209.0 mm
	c) Monsoon rainfall	1395.7 mm
<b>III.</b>	<b>FLOOD</b>	
	i) By Dicken's formula	1467 m <sup>3</sup> /sec
	ii) By Unit Hydrograph for Charoda rain gauge station (with 10.83 inches rainfall)	1802 m <sup>3</sup> /sec
	iii) Moderated flood discharge	623 m <sup>3</sup> /sec
<b>IV.</b>	<b>RESERVIOR</b>	
1	Catchment area	317.17 sq. km
2	Geology	Hilly and steep
3	Mean monsoon yield (Mean rainfall is 96% of annual rainfall)	210.03 Mm <sup>3</sup>
4	Mean Annual yield	218.8 Mm <sup>3</sup>
5	75% dependable yield	164.83 Mm <sup>3</sup>
6	75% dependable yield with 0.9 diminishing factor	147.83 Mm <sup>3</sup>
7	Gross storage capacity :	160.35 Mm <sup>3</sup>
8	Dead storage capacity	11.33 Mm <sup>3</sup>
9	Live storage capacity	149.02 Mm <sup>3</sup>
10	Percentage of gross storage to 75% dependable yield	97.59 %
11	Percentage of dead storage to gross storage	7.06 %
12	Full reservoir level (F.R.L.)	295.236 m
13	Maximum water level (M.W.L.)	298.165 m
14	Top bund level (T.B.L.)	298.990 m
15	Dead storage level (D.S.L.)	286.040 m
15	Minimum draw down level	288.68 m
17	Lowest river bed	275.87 m.
18	Water spread area at F.R.L.	3584.25 ha
19	Water spread area at M.W.L.	4248.86 ha
<b>V.</b>	<b>DAM</b>	
1	Length of earth dam	2361 m
2	Maximum height of dam	23.32 m
3	Top width of earth dam	4.577 m
4	Length of waste wei	183 m
<b>VI.</b>	<b>CANALS</b>	
1	a. Length of Left Bank Main Canal	23.30 km.
	b. Head discharge (L.B.C.)	12.52 cumecs
	c. Length of R.B.C.	10.6 km

	d. Head discharge (R.B.C.)	6.65 cumecs
	e. Length of distributaries	67.75 km
	f. Length of minor / sub-minor	278 km
	g. No. of distributaries	7
	h. No. of minors/ sub-minors	278
<b>VII.</b>	<b>AGRICULTURE STATISTICS</b>	
	a. No. of villages to be served	49 nos
	b. Total area commanded	24895 ha
	c. Total culturable area	21740 ha
	L.B.C.	14756.6 ha
	R.B.C.	6983.4 ha
	d. Total area under cultivation (existing pick up weir)	3422.5 ha
	i. Kharif	10952 ha
	ii. Rabi	345 ha
	iii. Double cropped area	4189 ha
	e. New cropped area	15872 ha
	f. irrigated area (existing)	3515 ha
	g. Designed irrigation area	3515 ha
	i. Rice (Kharif)	13320 ha- 3441 ha assured irrigation under pick-up-weir
	ii. Wheat (Rabi)	6721 ha



## **CHAPTER 4.0: WORK ELEMENTS AND DATA USED**

### **4.1 Work Elements**

The work elements under the PDS are as follow:

- Data collection and preparation of inventory
- Establishment of gauging and sediment sampling site
- Monitoring of hydrological and hydro-meteorological data
- Generation of various thematic maps of catchment using GIS.
- Processing and analysis of hydrological and hydro-meteorological data
- Assessment of sedimentation in the reservoir
- Assessment of present land use with the help of remote sensing data
- Evaluation of soil properties in the catchment area
- Estimation of soil loss from the catchment
- Prioritization of environmentally stressed areas in the catchment
- Development of catchment area treatment plan
- Development of sediment prediction model
- Impact assessment analysis on sediment yield
- Interim report preparation (yearly) and Final report submission
- Dissemination of knowledge, findings and application of the management plan to field engineers and common people through preparation of Manual, leaflets, booklets and organizing workshops

In order to fulfill the objectives of the PDS, various work elements have been distributed between National Institute of Hydrology, RC Bhopal and Water Resources Department, Govt. of Chhattisgarh.

### **4.2 Data Used**

#### **4.2.1 Meteorological data**

For the study, meteorological data including maximum, minimum temperature, relative humidity, wind speed and sunshine hours from 1971 to 2011 of Indira Gandhi Agriculture University, Raipur have been collected. Rainfall data of five rain gauge stations in and around Kodar reservoir catchment have been collected. The detail information of Rain gauge stations and data availability has been presented in Table 4.1. The Thiessen polygon of the catchment of Kodar reservoir has been prepared and it has been observed that Kodar, Bagbahara and Bartunga RG stations have impact on Kodar reservoir and hence the analysis have been performed on these stations only.

#### **4.2.2 Remote sensing data for sedimentation and landuse analysis**

In the present study, eight dates LISS III data of Path 102 and Row 57 of IRS P6 satellite have been used for sedimentation study using digital image processing technique of remote sensing data. The dates have been selected in such a way so that the whole range of live storage is covered at equal intervals. Two LISS IV data of IRS P6 have been used for identification of landuse in the study area- The details of satellite data has been presented in Table 4.2.



Table 4.1: Data availability of rainfall in Kodar reservoir catchment

S.N.	Rain gauge Station	Location		Data availability
		Latitude	Longitude	
1.	Kodar	21 <sup>0</sup> 11' 50" N	82 <sup>0</sup> 10' 40" E	1991 to 2009
2.	Mahasamund	21 <sup>0</sup> 07' N	82 <sup>0</sup> 07' E	1960 to 2007
3.	Bagbahara	21 <sup>0</sup> 03' N	82 <sup>0</sup> 25' 54" E	1975 to 2007
4.	Bartunga	21 <sup>0</sup> 13' N	82 <sup>0</sup> 29' 30" E	1975 to 2007
5.	Pithora	21 <sup>0</sup> 15' 30" N	82 <sup>0</sup> 31' E	1966 to 2007

Table 4.2: Details of satellite data used for the study

S.N.	Date	Satellite	Sensor	Path	Row	Reservoir levels (m)
LISS III data						
1.	09-May-2009	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	287.39
2.	22-Mar-2009	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	288.49
3.	29-Oct-2008	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	289.37
4.	14-May-2008	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	290.68
5.	24-Oct-2009	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	291.69
6.	03-Mar-2008	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	293.03
7.	15-Jan-2008	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	293.94
8.	11-Oct-2007	IRS P6	LISS III	102	57	295.16
LISS IV data						
1.	LISS IV, IRS P6, L4MX, Orbit 29270, Segment 1, Strip 1, Scene 51, Date 07-June-2009, Pass Type PLD, Grid orbit 29270-10% shift					
2.	LISS IV, IRS P6, L4MX, Orbit 31316, Segment 1, Strip 1, Scene 48, Date 29-Oct-2009, Pass Type PLD, Grid orbit 31316-20% shift					

#### 4.2.3 Collection of runoff and sediment data

In the PDS study, a gauge-discharge and sediment sampling site on river Kodar at Koma village has been upgraded. The daily runoff data and sediment samples for the monsoon period of 2010 to 2012 have been collected by WRD Raipur. The sediment samples have been analyzed for determination of sediment concentration in river water.

#### 4.2.4 Other information/data used

The ground water levels, location and other details of twenty wells in the catchment of Kodar reservoir have been collected. Daily reservoir levels for last ten years, elevation capacity curve/table and other reservoir details have been collected for selection of remote sensing data and other analysis. Other data collected for the study consisting information of soils, geology, geomorphology, villages, panchayat boundary and other details.

## CHAPTER 5.0- METHODOLOGY

### 5.1 General

The methodology for the present study included preparation of inventory on meteorological data, rainfall, soil information, soil tests, collection and analysis of sediment samples, reservoir sediment analysis, land use detection, sediment modeling, identification of priority sub-catchments and development of catchment area treatment plan and application of rainfall-runoff-sediment modeling for impact assessment analysis. Various steps used to achieve the objectives of the purpose driven study are presented below.

1. Preparation of inventory on hydrology, meteorology, geology, land use, soil, reservoir elevations and other details.
  - a) Collection of field information, rainfall, reservoir details, reservoir levels, land use pattern, river system and other statistics of the study area.
  - b) Collection of information on topography, geology, geomorphology, land use, demography etc.
  - c) Collection of meteorological data on temperature, relative humidity, solar radiation, wind velocity etc.
  - d) Collection of information of soil type, soil depth and other soil properties in the catchment area. Soil testing for infiltration, hydraulic conductivity, texture analysis, bulk density etc.
  - e) Procurement of remote sensing data on the basis of reservoir levels.
2. Instrumentation, collection of hydrological and sediment data of Kodar rivers.
  - a) Establishment of gauge-discharge and sediment sampling sites.
  - b) Regular collection and monitoring of sediment samples.
3. Preparation of thematic maps on drainage, soil type, land use, contours, villages, road network, geology in GIS environment.
  - a) Preparation of base map of Kodar reservoir includes river network and reservoir.
  - b) Generation of thematic maps of catchment area, contour, soils, land use, geology, road and rail network, villages etc. in GIS environment and development of Digital Elevation Model for the study area.
4. Estimation of revised reservoir capacity using remote sensing technique.
  - a) Digital image analysis of remote sensing data.
  - b) Estimation of revised capacity.
5. Application of sediment prediction model.
  - a) Analysis of hydro-meteorological, discharge and sediment samples.
  - b) Application of suitable sediment yield model.
6. Prioritization of catchment area based on soil loss using geomorphological characteristics, Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE), sediment yield etc.
  - a) Determination of present land uses in the catchment area from remote sensing data and generation of various thematic maps representing the factors of USLE in sub-catchments.

- b) Determination geomorphological characteristics of sub-catchments.
  - c) Determination of sediment yield using suitable model from sub-catchments.
  - d) Prioritize the sub catchments considering the present state of stress and environmental degradation.
7. Preparation of catchment area treatment plan.
- a) Development of management plan for the catchment area consisting of priority areas, extent of erosion, suitable conservation measures and their effect on erosion from the catchment and catchment area treatment plan.
8. Impact assessment analysis on sedimentation and runoff regime
- a) Suggestion for suitable measures of soil conservation in the catchment area.
  - b) Analysis of impact of suggested measures on sediment and runoff.

## **5.2 Creation of GIS Database**

Geographic Information System (GIS) plays an important role in generating automated spatial datasets and establishing spatial relationships. During the last few decades GIS software has gained importance for generating overlays and making site-specific decisions. Multi-spectral remotely sensed satellite data plays a vital role in the generation of the overlays. Manual integration of the entire surface and sub-surface information requires huge expenditure of manpower and time. Working on the GIS platform is faster, more accurate and therefore cost-effective. The integration of the satellite imagery and GIS has eased the data integration and analysis of very large data sets. A GIS, captures, stores, analyzes, manages, and presents data that is linked to location.

A commonly accepted definition of a GIS is “a system of hardware, software, data, people, organizations, and institutional arrangements for collecting, storing, analyzing, and disseminating information about areas of the earth”. In short, GIS is a computer-based system that can deal with virtually any type of information about features that can be referenced by geographical location. These systems are capable of handling both location and attribute data about such features. Most GISs use one of two primary approaches to represent the location component of geographic information: a raster (grid cell) or vector (polygon point) format. In the raster format, the value stored for each cell indicates the type of object or condition that is found at that location over the entire cell. A coarse grid requires less data storage space but will provide a less accurate geographic description of the original data. In the vector format, feature boundaries are converted to straight-sided polygons that approximate the original regions. These polygons are encoded by determining the coordinates of their vertices, called nodes, which can be connected to form arcs. In the present study Integrated Land and Water Information System (ILWIS) and Arc GIS 9.3 have been used for digitations, generation and manipulation of various thematic layers to obtain desired results.

### **5.2.1 Integrated land and water information system (ILWIS)**

The Integrated Land and Water Information System (ILWIS) is a Geographic Information System (GIS) with digital image processing capabilities. The International Institute for Aerospace Survey and Earth Sciences (ITC), Enschede, The Netherlands has developed ILWIS.

As a GIS package, ILWIS allows to input, manage, analyze and present geographical data. ILWIS is a Windows-based, integrated GIS consisting of:

- Display of raster and multiple vector maps in map windows
- Display of tables in table windows
- Interactive retrieval of attribute information
- Image processing facilities
- Manipulation of maps in a Map Calculator
- Manipulation of tables in a Table Calculator
- Script language to perform 'batch' jobs

ILWIS functionality for vector includes: digitizing with mouse and/or digitizer, interpolation from isolines or points, calculation of segment or point density, pattern analysis. ILWIS functionality for raster includes: distance calculation, creation of a Digital Elevation Model (DEM), calculation of slope/aspect, deriving attribute maps, classify maps, manipulating maps with iff-statements, with Boolean logic, crossing maps, etc. For satellite imagery: creation of histograms, color composites, sampling and classification, filtering, multi-band statistics. ILWIS also provides import and export routines, editing of point, segment, polygon and raster maps, change of projection/coordinate system of maps, and output with annotation. The latitudes and longitudes, scale, legend, compass showing north direction etc. can be easily added on the output map. ILWIS 3.0 and 3.6 have been used in the present study to generate different raster maps and tables.

### **5.2.2 Arc GIS**

The Arc GIS is a versatile software of ESRI, USA includes a suite of integrated applications that allow to perform GIS tasks, from simple to advanced, including mapping, geographic analysis, data editing and compilation, data management, visualization, and geo-processing. The important applications of ARC GIS software are as follows:

- Mapping and visualization with Arc Map
- Data management with Arc Catalog
- Editing and data compilation
- Table and attribute information
- Geoprocessing
- 3D visualization with Arc Globe and Arc Scene
- The geo database
- GIS Servers and services

ArcGIS provides a scalable framework for implementing GIS for a single user or many users on desktops, in servers, over the Web, and in the field. ArcGIS is an integrated family of GIS software products for building a complete GIS.

ArcGIS Desktop is the primary seat used by GIS professionals to compile, author, and use geographic information and knowledge. It is available at three functional levels—Arc View, Arc Editor, and Arc Info. ArcGIS Desktop includes an integrated suite of comprehensive desktop applications—Arc Map, ArcCatalog, ArcToolbox, and ArcGlobe. Each application has a rich set of GIS tools and operators. ArcGIS Desktop is a

comprehensive set of professional GIS applications used to solve problems, to meet a mission, to increase efficiency, to make better decisions, and to communicate, visualize, and understand an idea, a plan, a conflict, a problem, or the status of a situation. In conducting this work, GIS users perform a number of tasks, including:

- Working with maps
- Compiling, editing, and maintaining geographic data
- Automating work tasks with geoprocessing
- Analysis and modeling using geoprocessing
- Visualization and display of results in maps, 3D views, and dynamic, time-based displays
- Managing and maintaining multiuser geographic databases
- Serving GIS resources and results to a broad range of users for a multitude of applications
- Building custom applications to share GIS
- Documenting and cataloging their results—geographic datasets, maps, globes, Geoprocessing scripts, GIS services, applications etc.

ArcGIS Desktop is the primary platform for GIS professionals to manage their complex GIS workflows and projects and to build data, maps, models, and applications. It's the starting point and the foundation to perform and deploy GIS across organizations. ArcGIS Desktop includes a suite of applications including ArcCatalog, ArcMap, ArcGlobe, ArcToolbox and ModelBuilder. Using these applications and interfaces in unison, users can perform any GIS task, from simple to advance. ArcGIS Desktop is scalable and can address the needs of many types of users. It is available at three functional levels:

1. **ArcView** focuses on comprehensive data use, mapping, and analysis.
2. **ArcEditor** adds advanced geographic editing and data creation.
3. **ArcInfo** is a complete, professional GIS desktop containing comprehensive GIS functionality.

In the present study/project, a GIS base data base has been created for Kodar catchment that will be useful for future planning and scientific management of water resources. For development of GIS data base, various thematic maps including catchment and command areas, river network, road network, geology, geomorphology, soil, contour, digital elevation model (DEM),village maps have been prepared/generated. Drainage, land use, soil, sub watershed maps of the study area have been prepared in Arc GIS 9.3 for implementation of SWAT model.

### **5.3 Collection and Analysis of Meteorological Data**

Hydrological and meteorological data play an important role in transformation of runoff from rainfall and soil detachment from the surface of the earth. In the present study, the rainfall data of all stations falling or surrounded Kodar catchment are collected. Meteorological data including daily minimum and maximum temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, sunshine hour, solar radiation etc. have been collected and analyzed for getting monthly statistics for SWAT model. A gauge/discharge and

sediment sampling site on river Kodar near Koma village has been upgraded for collection of discharge and sediment data from 2010 to 2012.

#### 5.4 Revised Capacity using Remote Sensing and GIS

The basic principle of revised capacity estimation using remote sensing and GIS is that when the sedimentation occurred in a reservoir its water spread reduced with respect to its original area before impoundment and the revised water spreads at different levels can be computed with the help of image analysis technique of GIS software. In the present study, the digital image analysis has been carried out using Integrated Land and Water Information System (ILWIS 3.0). All images were geo-referenced with the help of index map/Survey of India toposheets, so that they can be overlaid and linked with latitude/longitude and geographical area can be computed. In remote sensing technique, the transmittance characteristics of different objects recorded by sensors are used to distinguish various land uses on the earth surface. The remote sensing images consist of digital numbers and need to be converted in radiance values according to radiance characteristics of different sensors. These radiance values can be used to make a relative comparison. The radiance  $L(\lambda)$  can be computed using following equation:

$$L(\lambda) = L_{\min}(\lambda) + [L_{\max}(\lambda) - L_{\min}(\lambda)] * \frac{Q_{\text{cal}}}{Q_{\text{cal,max}}} \quad \dots 5.1$$

The minimum radiance  $L_{\min}(\lambda)$  and maximum radiance  $L_{\max}(\lambda)$  of a sensor can be obtained from its radiometric characteristics. The radiometric characteristics of different sensors in IRS 1D/P6 LISS III sensors are given in Table 5.1 (NIH, 2003-04).

Table 5.1: Radiometric characteristics of various bands of IRS 1D/P6 sensors.

S.N.	Band	Wavelength range	Satellite radiance for LISS III of IRS 1D/P6	
			$L_{\min}$	$L_{\max}$
1.	Band II	0.52-0.59	-2.8	296.8
2.	Band III	0.62-0.68	-1.2	204.3
3.	Band IV	0.77-0.86	-1.5	206.2
4.	Band V	1.55-1.70	-0.37	27.19

In the visible region of the spectrum (0.4 - 0.7  $\mu\text{m}$ ), the transmittance of water is significant and the absorption and reflectance are low. The reflectance of water in the visible region scarcely rises above 5%. The absorption of water rises rapidly in the near-IR where both, the reflectance and transmittance are low. The normalized difference water index (*NDWI*), normalized difference vegetation index (*NDVI*), band ratio, NIR (*Band III*) and false color composite (*FCC*) have been used to identify the water pixels in the images. The *NDWI*, *NDVI* and band ratio (*BR*) can be written as:

$$NDWI = \left[ \frac{GREEN - NIR}{GREEN + NIR} \right] \quad \dots 5.2$$

$$NDVI = \left[ \frac{RED - NIR}{RED + NIR} \right] \quad \dots 5.3$$

$$BR = \frac{GREEN}{NIR} \quad \dots 5.4$$

where, *GREEN* is *Band II*, *RED* is *Band III* and *NIR* is *Band IV* of IRS satellites (IRS ID and P6). The slicing operation of the *NDWI*, *NDVI*, *Band IV* or *BR* images has been carried out to extract the water pixels from the rest. The revised areas obtained from this operation may be used to estimate the revised volume between two consecutive elevations with the help of cone formula. In the cone formula, the volume of water (*V*) between two consecutive water spread areas *A<sub>1</sub>* and *A<sub>2</sub>* can be expressed as:

$$V = \frac{h}{3}(A_1 + A_2 + \sqrt{A_1 A_2}) \quad \dots 5.5$$

Where, *h* is the height between two elevations. The revised cumulative capacities have been obtained by adding the revised volumes between consecutive intervals. For comparison, the original cumulative capacities on different stage of pass have been obtained from the original elevation-area-capacity curve.

### 5.5 Land Use Classification

For determination of land uses in the Kodar catchment, digital image processing technique using supervised classification of LISS IV data obtained from IRS P6 data has been used. The LISS IV sensor mounted on IRS P6 satellite does not follow any standard path-row system; hence the browsing facility of National Remote Sensing Centre (NRSC), Hyderabad has been used to identify two different scenes of June and Oct for identification of land uses in study area. The digital data obtained from NRSC have been imported in ILWIS and after geo-referencing, sample sets have been generated from different land uses. The maximum likelihood technique of classification has been used for determination of different land uses in Kodar Catchment. The classified image has been verified with field truth information obtained from survey. Some of independent pixels have been merged with surrounding land use.

### 5.6 Soil Investigation for Erosion and Sediment Modeling

The detachment, entrainment and transportation which are the primary processes in soil erosion and sediment modeling may vary with the soil characteristics. The detail soil analysis and their spatial distribution are required to understand the erosion process and required soil conservation measures in CAT plan. Also, the soil properties are used as inputs in most of the soil erosion and sediment models. In the present study, infiltration tests using double ring infiltrometer, saturated hydraulic conductivity using Guelph permeater, particle size analysis using coarse sieve and pipette analysis, sp. gravity using density bottle and dry density using core cutter method have been estimated on eleven sites covering all types of soils in the study area. The methodology used and analyses performed have been described below:

#### 5.6.1 Infiltration test

The infiltration is the process of movement of water into soil through the soil surface and marks the transition of fast moving surface water to slow moving soil moisture and groundwater. Quantitatively, infiltration rate is defined as the depth of water passing into the soil per unit time and has the dimension of velocity. The infiltration rate as a function of time defines the infiltration curve. Water that runs off over land causes erosion, flooding and degradation of water quality. Infiltration, on the other hand, constitutes the sole source of water to sustain the growth of vegetation, is filtered by the soil which removes many contaminants through physical,

chemical and biological processes, and replenishes the ground water supply to wells, springs and streams (Rawls et al, 1993; Oram, 2005).

Infiltration is critical because it supports life on land on our planet. The ability to quantify infiltration is of great importance in water resources management. Prediction of flooding, erosion and pollutant transport all depend on the rate of runoff which is directly affected by the rate of infiltration. Quantification of infiltration is also necessary to determine the availability of water for crop growth and to estimate the amount of additional water needed for irrigation. Also, by understanding how infiltration rates are affected by surface conditions, measures can be taken to increase infiltration rates and reduce the erosion and flooding caused by overland flow. For estimation of infiltration characteristics of soil, empirical and physical models have been developed. The empirical models include Kostiakov, Horton, and Holtan, and approximate physically based models like those of Green and Ampt and Philip. Empirical models tend to be less restricted by assumptions of soil surface and soil profile conditions, but more restricted by the conditions for which they were calibrated, since their parameters are determined based on actual field-measured infiltration data (Hillel, 1998; Skaggs and Khaleel, 1982). In the present analysis, the double ring infiltrometer has been used and infiltration curve and rate of infiltration for soils on different sites have been determined. The Kostiakov's, modified Kostiakov's, Horton's and Philip's two-term models have been applied which may be used to understand the infiltration process in the catchment of Kodar reservoir.

#### **5.6.1.1 Kostiakov's model**

Kostiakov (1932) and independently Lewis (1938) proposed the following empirical infiltration equation based on curve fitting from field data.

$$F_p = K_k t^\alpha \quad \dots 5.6$$

where,  $F_p$  is the cumulative infiltration at any time  $t$  after infiltration starts, and  $K_k$  and  $\alpha$  are the constants. Criddle et al. (1956) used the following logarithmic form of the equation to determine the parameters  $K_k$  and  $\alpha$  of model.

$$\log F_p = \log K_k + \alpha \log t \quad \dots 5.7$$

The major drawback of Kostiakov's model was that it predicts the rate of infiltration as infinity at time  $t$  equals zero and reaches zero at time equals infinity. In actual field condition, after some time, the infiltration rate reaches a steady rate (Philip, 1957a, b, c; Haverkamp et al., 1987; Naeth et al, 1991). Israelson and Hanson (1967) also developed the modified Kostiakov's equation and applied it for estimation of irrigation infiltration.

#### **5.6.1.2 Modified Kostiakov's model**

The modified Kostiakov's model can be expressed as:

$$F_p = Bt^n + i_c \quad \dots 5.8$$

where,  $F_p$  is the cumulative infiltration at any time  $t$ ,  $i_c$  is the asymptotic steady infiltration flux and  $B$  and  $n$  are characterizing constants. The Kostiakov and modified Kostiakov equations tend to be the preferred models used for irrigation infiltration, probably because these models are less restrictive as to the mode of water application than some other models.



### 5.6.1.3 Horton's model

The Horton described the infiltration process more implicitly and recognized that infiltration capacity ( $f_p$ ) decreased with time until it approached a minimum constant rate ( $f_c$ ). Horton (1939, 1940) derived his equation for infiltration, assuming that the rate of infiltration decays exponentially and proportional to differences of infiltration capacity and final constant infiltration rate. The equation can be described by the following equation:

$$\frac{-df_p}{dt} = \beta(f_p - f_c) \quad \dots 5.9$$

where,  $\beta$  is a soil parameter that controls the rate of decrease of infiltration and depend on initial water content. Integrating the above equation, we can get

$$\ln(f_p - f_c) = -\beta t + cons \quad \dots 5.10$$

To derive the value of *cons*, the limiting condition was applied. According to this condition, at  $t = 0$ ,  $f_p = f_o$  and *cons* will be  $(f_o - f_c)$ . Putting the value of *cons* in the above eq., the final equation of Horton's model can be described as

$$f_p = f_c + (f_o - f_c)e^{-\beta t} \quad \dots 5.11$$

where,  $f_p$  is the infiltration capacity or potential infiltration rate,  $f_c$  is the final constant infiltration rate,  $f_o$  is the infiltration capacity at  $t = 0$ ;  $\beta$  is a soil parameter and  $t$  is time after start of infiltration. The parameters,  $f_c$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $f_o$  can be computed from measured infiltration data. The experimental  $f_c$  value is subtracted from  $f$  and a logarithmic graph is plotted between  $(f - f_c)$  and time ( $t$ ). A straight line is fitted on this graph and  $\beta$  can be determined from the slope of the line and  $f_o$  can be determined from the intercept.

### 5.6.1.4 Philip two-term model

Philip two-term model simulates vertical infiltration of water into a homogeneous sandy soil profile. The water depth is much greater than the water penetration depth. Hence, free water is available in excess at the surface, and the water content at the surface remains constant throughout the infiltration period (Philip, 1957a). For cumulative infiltration the general form of the Philip infiltration model is expressed in powers of the square-root of time,  $t$  as:

$$F_p = St^{1/2} + At + Bt^{3/2} \dots \dots \dots \quad \dots 5.12$$

where,  $F_p$  is cumulative infiltration at time  $t$ ,  $S$  is the Sorptivity depends upon initial ( $\theta_i$ ) and final soil water content ( $\theta_n$ ), and.  $A$ ,  $B$  are the constants depend on both soil properties and on  $\theta_i$  and  $\theta_n$ . Philip (1957b) proposed that by truncating his series solution for infiltration from a ponded surface after the first two terms, a concise infiltration rate equation could be obtained which would be useful for small times. The resulting equations for cumulative infiltration and infiltration rate ( $f$ ) may be:

$$F_p = St^{1/2} + At \quad \dots 5.13$$

$$f = \frac{1}{2}St^{-1/2} + A \quad \dots 5.14$$

The constant A can be measured by determining the intercept and S by measuring the slope of the best-fit line of plot between  $F_p/t$  and  $t^{-1/2}$ . The best-fit infiltration model for a site or in the region can be evaluated by comparison of observed rate of infiltration and computed rate of infiltration using model parameters. In the present analysis integral square error (ISE), root mean square error (RMSE) and efficiency ( $\eta$ ) have been used for selection of best-fit infiltration model for the site and the region. The ISE is a measure of system performance formed by integrating the square of the system error over a fixed interval of time; smaller the ISE value closer is the match. The RMSE is the square root of the mean-squared-error. The RMSE ranges from 0 to infinity, with 0 corresponding to the ideal. The efficiency indicates the deviation of initial and remaining variance expressed in percentage. The formulae for computation of ISE, RMSE and efficiency are given below.

a) Integral Square Error (ISE):

$$ISE = \frac{\left[ \sum_{t=1}^n \{I_o(t) - I_c(t)\}^2 \right]^{0.5}}{\sum_{t=1}^n I_o(t)} \quad \dots 5.15$$

b) Root Mean Square Error (RMSE):

$$RMSE = \left[ \frac{\sum_{t=1}^n \{I_o(t) - I_c(t)\}^2}{n} \right]^{0.5} \quad \dots 5.16$$

c) Efficiency

$$\eta = \frac{IV - RV}{RV} \quad \dots 5.17$$

$$IV = \sum_{t=1}^n [I_o(t) - \bar{I}_o]^2 \quad \dots 5.18$$

$$RV = \sum_{t=1}^n [I_o(t) - I_c(t)]^2 \quad \dots 5.19$$

where,  $I_o(t)$  and  $I_c(t)$  are the observed and computed rate of infiltration or cumulative infiltration at any time  $t$ ,  $n$  is the no. of observation,  $IV$  is the initial variance and  $RV$  is the remaining variance.

### 5.6.2 Hydraulic conductivity

The hydraulic conductivity is the measure of the ability of the soil to transmit water, and depends on properties of both soil and water. It is defined as the volume rate of flow of water through a unit area of the soil under a unit gradient. The measurement of hydraulic conductivity is also of considerable importance for irrigation, drainage and evaporation studies. In the project, the field saturated hydraulic conductivity has been measured using Guleph permeameter. The Guleph permeameter is essentially an “in hole” Mariotte bottle constructed of concentric transparent plastic tubes. The apparatus consists of a tripod assembly, support tubes and lower air tube fittings, reservoir assembly; well head scale and upper air tube fittings and auxiliary tools. The reservoir assembly provides a means of storing water and measuring the outflow rate. The Guleph permeameter method measures the steady state liquid recharge necessary to maintain a constant depth of liquid in an uncased cylindrical well finished above the water table. The Richard analysis is the basis for calculation of the field saturated hydraulic conductivity.

After setting up the instrument at the desired depth of whole, 5 cm well head height is established. The rate of fall of water in the reservoir is noted. The rate of fall of water in the reservoir is noted at 2 minute intervals. The difference of readings at consecutive time intervals divided by the time interval is equal to the rate of fall of water in the reservoir. The monitoring is continued till the rate of fall does not change significantly in three successive time intervals. This steady state rate of fall of water in the reservoir is denoted as ' $R_1$ ' for a well head height of ' $H_1$ '. Similarly a well head height of 10 cm is established (' $H_2$ ') by raising the air inlet tip to a height of 10 cm. The rate of fall of water is monitored and the steady state rate of fall of water in the reservoir is denoted as ' $R_2$ ' for the well head height of ' $H_2$ '. The field saturated hydraulic conductivity ( $K_{fs}$ ) in cm/sec and metric flux potential ( $\phi_m$ ) in  $\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$  can be calculated using the following equation:

$$K_{fs} = X(0.0041R_2 - 0.0054R_1) \quad \dots 5.20$$

$$\phi_m = X(0.0572R_1 - 0.0237R_2) \quad \dots 5.21$$

where,  $X$  is reservoir constant equal to 35.39 when reservoir combination is used and 2.14 when only inner reservoir is used.  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  are the steady rate of fall of water in the reservoir in cm/sec for a well head of 5 cm and 10 cm respectively. The sorptivity ( $S$ ), which is an important parameter in soil infiltration processes can also be computed if the ambient volumetric water content ( $\theta_i$ ), field saturated volumetric water content ( $\theta_s$ ) are and difference of these two volumetric water contents  $\Delta\theta$  are known. The following equation can be used for estimation of sorptivity in  $\text{cm}/\text{sec}^{-1/2}$ .

$$S = \sqrt{2(\Delta\theta)\phi_m} \quad \dots 5.22$$

The constant  $\alpha$  in  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  can be also be computed using following equation:

$$\alpha = \frac{K_{fs}}{\phi_m} \quad \dots 5.23$$

### 5.6.3 Particle size analysis

Many of the soil properties depend on sizes of different particles and their combination in soil mass. The particle size analysis is carried out to determine the relative proportion of different grain sizes that make a given soil mass. There relative proportion of sand, silt and clay determine the soil texture. Soil textures are classified by the fractions of each soil (sand, silt, and clay) separately present in a soil. Classifications are typically named for the primary constituent particle size or a combination of the most abundant particles sizes, e.g. "sandy clay" or "silty clay." Loam is used to describe a roughly equal concentration of sand, silt, and clay, and lends to the naming of even more classifications, e.g. "clay loam" or "silt loam". The particle size analysis is carried out by sieve analysis and sediment analysis. The soil can be classified in twelve major textural classes using soil triangle suggested by United State Department of Agriculture (USDA).

#### 5.6.4 Apparent Specific Gravity

Specific gravity ( $G$ ) is defined as the ratio of the weight of a given volume of soil solids to the weight of an equal volume of water. Apparent specific gravity ( $G_a$ ) refers to the soil mass instead of the soil particles and takes into account the voids within the soil mass. Apparent specific gravity is defined as the ratio of the weight of a given volume of soil mass to the weight of an equal volume of water. Apparent specific gravity is related to the specific gravity by the following relation:

$$G_a = (1 - \eta)G \quad \dots 5.24$$

where,  $\eta$  is the porosity of the soil. The density bottle is used to determine sp. gravity for a wide range of material from clay to sand and gravel smaller than 10 mm sizes. The specific gravity is determined using the following equation in laboratory.

$$G = \frac{(M_2 - M_1)}{(M_2 - M_1) - (M_3 - M_4)} \quad \dots 5.25$$

where,  $M_1$  is mass of empty bottle,  $M_2$  is mass of the bottle + dry soil,  $M_3$  is mass of bottle + soil + water and  $M_4$  is mass of bottle filled with water.

#### 5.6.5 Dry density

The dry density is used in water balance model for water resources management. The in situ dry density has been determined with the help of core cutter. The method is widely used for the determination of the field density of fine-grained natural or compacted soil free from aggregates. By measuring unit weight and moisture content and using empirical relations, various strength, deformation, permeability and consolidation parameters can be estimated. This also entails knowing the composition of soil. The cylindrical core cutter is used for determination of dry density  $\gamma_d$  in  $\text{gm/cm}^3$  on field. The following equations are used for computation of bulk density and dry density of soil.

$$\gamma_d = \frac{100\gamma_b}{100 + w} \quad \dots 5.26$$

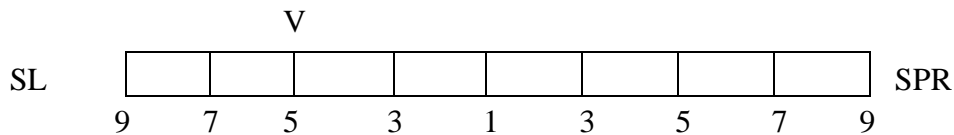
$$\gamma_b = \frac{W_1 - W_2}{V} \quad \dots 5.27$$

where,  $W_1$  is weight of cutter + soil in gm,  $W_2$  is weight of core cutter in gm,  $V$  is volume of core cutter and  $w$  is moisture content. The results of detailed investigation have been used in soil erosion, prioritization and sediment modeling studies.

The prioritization of sub-watersheds is an essential element for development of catchment area treatment plan and management of watersheds. Before taking up any catchment area treatment plan, first question arise that which area should be treated first and by prioritization, the planners and managers may be able to identify the stressed areas of watershed where immediate attention are required. In the present prioritization approach, Saaty's approach of analytical hierarchal approach has been used for selection of priority watersheds.

### 5.7 Prioritization of Sub-Watersheds using Saaty's AHP

The Saaty's AHP constructs a matrix of pair –wise comparisons (ratios) between the factors affecting the decision. In the present study, nine different factors may be termed as erosion hazards parameters (EHPs) have been used for construction of AHP matrix. The size of comparison matrix will be a square matrix with of size equal to no. of parameters considers for decision. The relative importance between two factors can be scaled between 1 and 9. The weight 1 indicates the equal importance, while 9 indicates that one factor is more important than other. Reciprocal of 1 to 9 (1/1 and 1/9) show that one is less important than other. A comparison of each parameter with all other parameters is made to fill the comparison matrix. In this way, total no. of comparison comes out to be  ${}^n C_2$ . For filling the upper triangular of matrix, each time two parameters are considered one by one and considering the relative importance, a mark is fixed between 1 to 9 is assigned. For example, if the soil loss (SL) and sediment production rate (SPR) are considered.



As here, the judgment value (V) is left side of 1, so for filling the upper matrix actual value will be used. If the judgment value is right side of 1 then reciprocal will be used. The lower triangular matrix is filled by taking reciprocal of upper triangular matrix. In that way, comparison matrix can be determined. The normalized principal Eigen vector which is called priority vector can be used to assign the weights for different EHPs. The Principal Eigen value ( $\lambda_{max}$ ) of priority vector may be computed by the summation of products between each element of Eigen vector and the sum of columns of the reciprocal matrix.

#### 5.7.1 Consistency check

The consistency of judgment can be checked by estimating consistency ratio. The consistency ratio (CR) can be computed by the following equation:

$$CR = \frac{CI}{RI} \tag{5.28}$$

where, CI is the consistency index and RI is the random consistency index. The consistency index is a measure of consistency can be estimated using following equation:

$$CI = \frac{\lambda_{max} - n}{n - 1} \tag{5.29}$$

where,  $\lambda_{max}$  is the principal Eigen value obtained from priority matrix and n is the size of comparison matrix. Saaty has determined random consistency index (RI) by generating reciprocal matrix of various sizes and estimated values of RI on the basis of sample size. The average random consistency ratios for different sizes of matrix are given below:

N	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
RI	0	0	0.58	0.90	1.12	1.24	1.32	1.41	1.45	1.49

If the consistency ratio is less than 10%, the decision may be considered as consistent.

### 5.7.2 Priority assessment

Since EHPs depends on several factors and vary significantly, it is necessary to convert this variation in the same range for all EHPs by normalization to ensure that no layer exerts an influence beyond its determined weight. The normalized weight for an EHP for a watershed is determined by the following equation:

$$W_{ij} = \left[ \frac{NUB_i - NLB_i}{OUB_i - OLB_i} \right] [EHP_{ij} - OLB_i] \quad \dots 5.30$$

where,  $W_{ij}$  is the normalized value of  $i^{th}$  EHP of  $j^{th}$  watershed,  $NUB_i$  and  $NLB_i$  are the normalized upper bound and lower bound for  $i^{th}$  EHP.  $OUB_i$  and  $OLB_i$  are the original upper bound and lower bound for  $i^{th}$  EHP.  $EHP_{ij}$  is the original value of  $i^{th}$  EHP for  $j^{th}$  sub-watershed. Generally, the normalized range is generally considered in the range of 0 to 1. The equation can be converted as:

$$W_{ij} = \left[ \frac{EHP_{ij} - OLB_i}{OUB_i - OLB_i} \right] \quad \dots 5.31$$

After estimating the normalized values of all EHPs ( $W_{ij}$ ) for all the sub-watersheds and Saaty's weight for each EHP ( $X_i$ ), the final priority of a sub-watershed ( $F_j$ ) can be determined using the following equation.

$$F_j = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i W_{ij} \quad \dots 5.32$$

On the basis of final priority, all sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment has been grouped in five classes of priority namely very high, high, moderate, low and very low on the basis of priority ranking. For assessment of priority, the Kodar reservoir catchment has been divided into 67 sub- watersheds (SW-1 to SW-67). The following nine erosion hazard parameters (EHPs) have been used for prioritization of sub-watersheds for development of catchment area treatment plan and discussed here.

1. Soil loss using USLE/RUSLE approach ( $SL$ )
2. Sediment production rate ( $SPR$ )
3. Sediment yield ( $SY$ )
4. Sediment transport index ( $STI$ ) and stream power index ( $SPI$ )
5. Slope ( $SI$ )
6. Drainage density ( $D_d$ )
7. Channel frequency ( $C_f$ )
8. Form factor ( $R_f$ )
9. Circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ )

### 5.7.3 Soil loss ( $SL$ ) using USLE and RUSLE model

For estimation of soil losses from Kodar reservoir catchment, Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) and Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE) models have been used. Both USLE and RUSLE group the numerous physical and management parameters that influence erosion under six factors, which can be expressed numerically. The USLE and RUSLE model can be expressed by the following equation:

$$A = R * K * L * S * C * P \quad \dots 5.33$$

Where,  $A$  is the computed soil loss caused by sheet and rill erosion ( $t \text{ ha}^{-1} \text{ yr}^{-1}$ ),  $R$  is the rainfall erosivity factor ( $\text{MJ mm h}^{-1} \text{ ha}^{-1} \text{ yr}^{-1}$ ),  $K$  is the soil erodibility factor ( $t \text{ ha h ha}^{-1} \text{ MJ}^{-1} \text{ mm}^{-1}$ ),  $L$  is the slope length factor (dimensionless),  $S$  is the slope steepness factor (dimensionless),  $C$  is the cover and management factor (dimensionless varies from 0 to 1) and  $P$  is the support practice factor (dimensionless varies from 0 to 1). The equation is said to be universal because it includes the four principal factors which influence soil loss: (1) the inherent erodibility of the soil is expressed by  $K$ , (2) erosive rainfall forces are expressed by  $R$ , (3) gravitational forces affecting runoff are given by the hillside length-slope factor ( $LS$ ), and (4) cover factors modifying erosive forces are expressed by  $C$  and  $P$ .

### 5.7.3.1 Rainfall erosivity factor ( $R$ )

The  $R$  factor is determined by both rainfall and the energy imparted to the land surface by the rain drop impact. Rainfall erosion index implies a numerical evaluation of a rainstorm or of a rainfall pattern, which describes its capacity to erode soil from an unprotected field. It is a function of intensity and duration of rainfall and mass, diameter, and velocity of the rain drop. Erosivity is expressed as the long term mean annual rainfall erosion index based on the kinetic energy of the rain. Keeping the soil and slope parameter constant, studies indicated that the most valuable combination of indicators of erosion loss from alluvial soil is the rainfall energy. It is a product term, which measures the interaction effect of storm energy and maximum prolonged intensity, antecedent moisture index, and total antecedent rainfall energy since the last tillage operation. The rainfall erosivity factor can be defined as the mean annual sum of individual storm erosion index values ( $EI_{30}$ ). Where,  $E$  is the total storm kinetic energy and  $I_{30}$  is the maximum rainfall intensity in 30 minutes. In India, using 45 stations, distribution in different rainfall zones, simple linear relationship between erosivity index and annual or seasonal rainfall has been developed (Singh et al. 1981)

$$\text{Annual } R \text{ factor,} \quad R_a = 79 + 0.363 * P_A \quad \dots 5.34$$

$$\text{Seasonal } R \text{ factor,} \quad R_s = 50 + 0.389 * P_s \quad \dots 5.35$$

where,  $P_A$  and  $P_s$  are the annual and seasonal rainfall in mm and  $R_a$  and  $R_s$  are annual and seasonal  $R$ -factor in  $\text{MJ mm ha}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1} \text{ yr}^{-1}$ .

### 5.7.3.2 Soil erodibility factor ( $K$ )

The soil erodibility factor relates the rate at which different soils erode.  $K$  is expressed as soil loss per unit of area per unit of  $R$  from a standard plot (a plot of 22.3m long with a uniform slope of 9% under continuous fallow and tilled parallel to the slope). Under the conditions of equal slope, rainfall, vegetative cover and soil management practices, some soils will erode more easily than others due to inherent soil characteristics. Erodibility varies with soil texture and organic matter content. This factor was originally determined quantitatively from the runoff plots. The direct measurement of  $K$  on unit runoff plots reflect the combined effects of all variables that significantly influence the ease with which a soil is eroded or the particular slope other than 9% slope. Various researchers have given  $K$  value for different soils for India and abroad used in USLE model, while RUSLE estimates the  $K$  value using textural property, organic

contents, textural property and permeability. The Nomograph for determination of  $K$  is given in Fig 5.1.

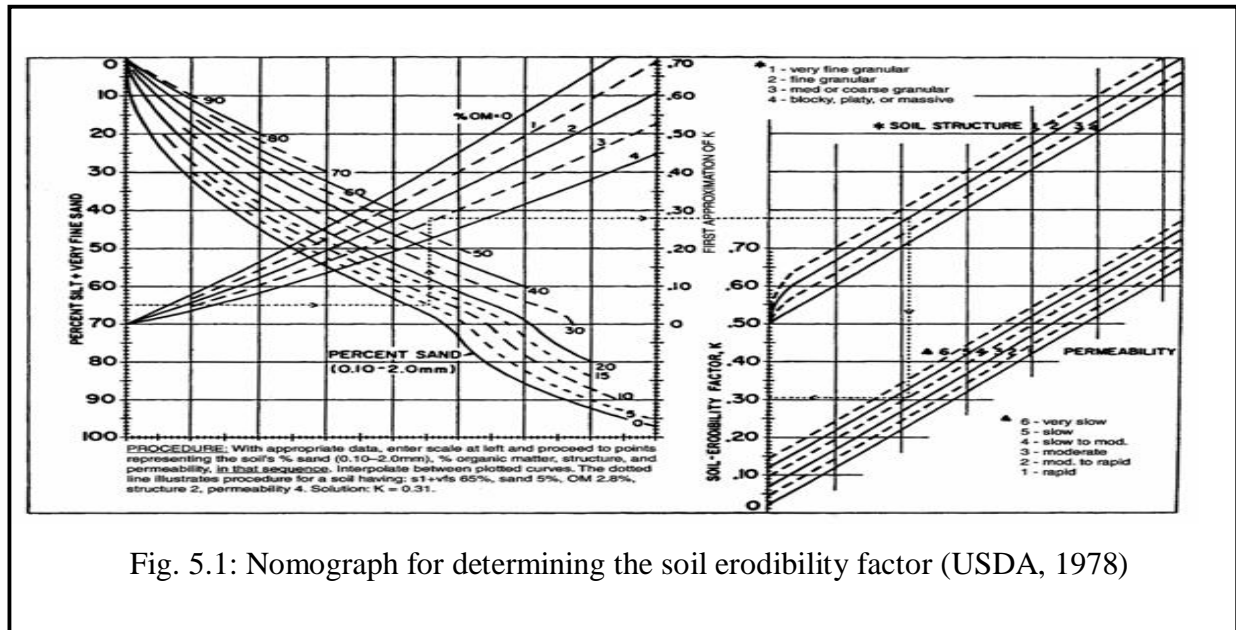


Fig. 5.1: Nomograph for determining the soil erodibility factor (USDA, 1978)

In case of USLE, the standard values for different soils in Indian condition have been used. During application of RUSLE, following equation given by Wischmeier et al. (1971) has been used:

$$100K = 2.1M^{1.14}(10^{-4})(12 - a) + 3.25(b - 2) + 2.5(c - 3) \quad \dots 5.36$$

where,  $M$  is the percent of silt, very fine sand and clay  $[(\% \text{ of very fine sand} + \% \text{ of silt}) * (100 - \% \text{ of clay})]$ ,  $a$  is the organic matter,  $b$  is the structure of the soil (very fine granular=1, fine granular=2, coarse granular=3, latic or massive=4) and  $c$  is the permeability of the soil (fast=1, fast to moderately fast=2, moderately fast =3, moderately fast to slow=4, slow=5, very slow=6). For determination of organic matter from organic carbon a factor 1.724 has been used (BUB, 2007; Wayne et al, 2003).

### 5.7.3.3 Slope length factor ( $L$ )

Slope length is important mainly with respect to the increase in the flow of water on slope. The slope length factor is the ratio of soil loss from the field slope length to that from 22.13 m length plots under identical conditions. Slope length is defined as the distance from the point of origin of overland flow to the point where either slope gradient decreases enough that soil deposition begins, or the runoff waters enters a well defined channel. The  $L$ -factor can be computed using the following equation:

$$L = \left( \frac{\lambda}{22.10} \right)^m \quad \dots 5.37$$

where,  $\lambda$  is the field slope length and can be worked out as;  $\lambda = (\text{level difference/slope}) * 100$  and  $m$  is the exponent varies from 0.2 for slope less than 1%, 0.3 for slope from 1% to 3%, 0.4 for slope from 3% to 5% and 0.5 for slope more than 5% slope.



#### 5.7.3.4 Slope steepness factor (*S*)

The slope steepness factor is the ratio of soil loss from the field slope gradient to that from 9% slope under otherwise identical conditions. The slope factor (*S*) was derived from data obtained on cropland, under natural rainfall, on slopes ranging from 3 to 18 % and less than 125 m in length. Potential extrapolation of the data with accuracy beyond this range has not been determined by direct soil loss measurements. The following equation suggested by Wischmeier and Smith (1965) has been used for evaluating the slope gradient factor:

$$S = \frac{[0.43 + 0.30G + 0.43G^2]}{6.613} \quad \dots 5.38$$

where, *G* is the slope gradient in percent.

In RUSLE, the slope length factor (*L*) and slope steepness factor (*S*) are computed in combination as *SL*-factor using the following equation:

$$SL = \sqrt{\frac{l}{22}} [0.065 + 0.045 * s + 0.0065 * s^2] \quad \dots 5.39$$

where, *l* is the slope length and *s* is the slope in percent. In RUSLE, the slope length has been worked out using DEM hydro processing facility of ILWIS 3.6. Before deriving the slope length, the sinks from DEM were identified and filled. The sinks filled DEM was used to generate flow direction map. The flow accumulation map was derived from flow direction map. The flow direction map is then used for drainage network extraction and in turn the drainage network ordering map. Lastly, the network ordering maps is used for determination of slope length map for the area. The slope map was generated using a script in ILWIS software.

#### 5.7.3.5 Cover and management factor (*C*)

The main role of vegetation cover in the interception of the rain drops is that their kinetic energy is dissipated by them. The crop management factor is the expected ratio of soil loss from land cropped under specified conditions to soil loss from clean, tilled fallow or identical soil and slope and under the same rainfall. A large amount of research and development has been done into the many existing *C*-factor for croplands and extended to pasture, range, and idle land. However, available soil loss data from undisturbed land were not sufficient to derive *C* values by direct comparison of measured soil loss rates, as was done for the development of *C* values for cropland. For determination of *C*-factor in RUSLE, the NDVI image is used. The following equation suggested by Van der et al. 1999, 2000 has been used for estimation of *C*-factor.

$$C = \exp \left[ -\alpha \frac{NDVI}{\beta - NDVI} \right] \quad \dots 5.40$$

The  $\alpha$ -value of 2 and  $\beta$ -value of 1 gave good results (Ioannis et al, 2009) have been used in the study. In has been observed that some values of *C*-factor may be reached to value greater than the limiting value of 1.0 and hence a scaling factor *Z* was used to keep the *C*-factor within the range of 0 to 1 (Mokua, F.O., 2009). The equation 3.28 can be written as:

$$C = Z * \exp \left[ -\alpha \frac{NDVI}{\beta - NDVI} \right] \quad \dots 5.41$$

for computation of value of *Z*, a scalar graph can be plotted between *NDVI* and *C-factor* and value of *Z* has been determined by iterations to scale the values of *C-factors* from 0 to 1.

### 5.7.3.6 Support practice factor (*P*)

Conservation practice conditions consist mainly in the methods of land use and tillage, and the agro technology. The *P*-factor in USLE is expressed as a ratio, which compares the soil loss from the investigated plot cultivated up and down the slope gradient. The amount of soil loss from a given land is influenced by the land management practice adopted. The value of *P* ranges from 1.0 for up and down cultivation to 0.25 for contour strip cropping of gentle slope. In case of RUSLE model, the agricultural area of catchment has been divided in different slope ranges and according to slope, the values of *P*-factor have been assigned. For other land uses, standard values considering no conservation measures have been given. The Table 5.2 indicated the *P*-factor values for different land uses used in USLE and RUSLE models.

Table 5.2: P-factor values for different land uses and slope

S.N.	Land use	Slope (%)	P- Factor	
			USLE model	RUSLE model
1.	Dense forest	All slope	0.8	0.8
2.	Agriculture	0 % to 2 %	1.0	0.6
		2 % to 5 %	1.0	0.5
		5 % to 8 %	1.0	0.5
		8 % to 12 %	1.0	0.6
		12 % to 16 %	1.0	0.7
		16 % to 20 %	1.0	0.8
		More than 20 %	1.0	0.9
3.	Scrub	All slope	1.0	0.8
	Settlement	All slope	1.0	1.0
	Water body	All slope	1.0	1.0

All the thematic maps have been generated in ILWIS GIS for USLE and RUSLE model separately. After multiplication of thematic maps *R*, *K*, *LS*, *C* and *P*-factors, the annual and seasonal soil loss maps giving spatial distribution of soil losses have been generated.

### 5.7.4 Sediment production rate (*SPR*)

The geomorphological parameters beside climatological and human interference govern runoff and sediment yield from the sub-catchments and can be used for identification of priority areas for soil conservation measures. With the invention of high speed computers and GIS, it has become easy to compute various linear, areal and relief based geomorphological parameters for soil erosion modeling and planning for soil conservation works. For assessing soil erosion and sediment yield, various empirical models based on geomorphological parameters have been developed in the past (Mishra et al., 1984; Josh and Das, 1984).

Choudhary and Sharma (1998) used geomorphological characteristics such as drainage density, bifurcation ratio, relief ratio etc. for assessment of soil erosion and prioritization of sub-watersheds. The Universal Soil Loss Equation-Sediment Deposit Rate (USLE-SDR) predictions remain widely used for estimating annual soil loss at the catchment scale in un-gauged drainage basins (e.g. Trimble and Crosson, 2000; Angima et al., 2003; Martin et al., 2003; Lu et al., 2004; Boellstorff and Benito 2005; Fu et al., 2005; Onyando et al., 2005).

The sediment production rate has been estimated using geomorphology based model proposed by Josh & Das, 1983 for fixing priority of soil conservation in Kodar catchment. The SPR model can be described in mathematical terms as:

$$\text{Log}(SPR) = 4919.80 + 48.64\log(100 + R_f) - 1337.77\log(100 + R_c) - 1165.65\log(100 + C_c) \quad \dots 5.42$$

Where,  $SPR$  is the sediment production rate in ha-m/100 sq km/year,  $R_f$  is the form factor,  $R_c$  is the circulatory ratio and  $C_c$  is the compactness coefficient.

### 5.7.5 Sediment yield (SY)

Sediment yield is the weight of sediment passing a cross-section during a specified period of time (Thomas *et al.*, 1994). Typically sediment yield is evaluated on an annual base, but calculations can be performed for a single event. Sediment analysis modes offer two options for computing sediment yield: the flow duration curve method and the flow hydrograph method. A number of sediment yield models, both empirical and conceptual are commonly used to address wide ranging soil and water management problems. Most conservation planning for erosion control, however, uses empirical models to estimate average annual soil loss. Investigation into such empirical reveals that most of these models require input parameters in terms of spatial information of land use, vegetation cover, soils, slopes, drainage density, conservation practices, runoff and rainfall intensity etc. A simple empirical model, under Indian condition, quoted in literature (Kumar, 1985, Rao & Mahabaleswara, 1990) has been used for analysis. According to this model, the sediment yield can be expressed as:

$$V_s = 1.067 \times 10^{-3} P^{1.384} A^{1.292} D_d^{0.392} S^{0.129} F^{2.51} \quad \dots 5.43$$

Where,  $V_s$  is the sediment yield (Mm<sup>3</sup>/yr),  $P$  is the annual precipitation (cm),  $A$  is the sub-watershed area (km<sup>2</sup>),  $D_d$  is the Drainage density (km/ km<sup>2</sup>),  $S$  is the average slope and  $F$  is the vegetative cover factor can be expressed as:

$$F = \frac{0.21F_1 + 0.2F_2 + 0.6F_3 + 0.8F_4 + F_5}{\sum_{i=1}^5 F_i} \quad \dots 5.44$$

where,  $F_1$  is the area under reserved and protected forest,  $F_2$  is the unclassified forest area,  $F_3$  is the cultivated area,  $F_4$  is the grass & pasture land and  $F_5$  is the area of wasteland. The above equation indicates that all the parameters except precipitation are essentially mapping inputs which can be derived conveniently from drainage map, topographic contour map and land use can be derived from remote sensing analysis. As this model is an empirical model incorporates those parameters which essentially contribute sediment yield process, at the same time, data base creation and updating of these data from satellite based information is now a reality, it is very encouraging that such methodology would produce more realistic estimation of erosion rates for conservation planning process by various planning agencies especially in developing countries where data scarcity is a major hindrance for planning and development processes.

### 5.7.6 Sediment transport index (STI) and Stream power index (SPI)

The sediment transport index reflects the effect of topography on soil erosion. Two-dimensional catchment area is used instead of the one-dimensional slope length factor as in the Universal Soil Loss Equation for computation of sediment transport index. The stream transport index ( $STI$ ) can be expressed as:

$$STI = \left[ \frac{A}{22.13} \right] \left[ \frac{\sin(SI)}{0.0896} \right]^{1.3} \quad \dots 5.45$$

where,  $A$  is the upstream catchment area and  $SI$  is the slope steepness in degree. Unlike the length-slope factor in the Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) it is applicable to three-dimensional surfaces (Burrough et al., 1998). The stream power index ( $SPI$ ) takes into account both a local slope geometry and site location in the landscape combining data on slope steepness and specific catchment area. The stream power index can be expressed as;

$$SPI = \ln(A * \tan(SI)) \quad \dots 5.46$$

The stream power index can be used to describe potential flow erosion and related landscape processes. As specific catchment area and slope steepness increase, the amount of water contributed by upslope areas and the velocity of water flow increase, hence stream power index and erosion risk increase. The stream power index controls potential erosive power of overland flows, thickness of soil horizons, organic matter, pH, silt and sand content, plant cover distribution. The stream power index can be used for selection of sites for soil conservation measures to reduce the effect of concentrated surface runoff.

### 5.7.7 Average slope ( $SI$ )

The slope is an important topographical factor responsible for degradation of watershed. The steep slope causes more and more soil erosion resulting development of gullied lands and loosing the fertility and moisture holding ability of soils. For generation of slope map, the contour map and point elevation map of Kodar catchment and nearby area have been used. Using the inbuilt sub-routine of ILWIS, the slope map for the region is generated. Using the *iff* statement, the slope map for each of sub-watershed have been generated and using statistics of that map, the average soil loss from sub-watersheds have been computed separately.

### 5.7.8 Geomorphological parameters

Knowledge of landscape morphology along with the hydrologic processes is required to conceptualize the generation of runoff and sediment loss from precipitation events. The geomorphology of the watershed governs the erosion status and can be used for formulation of CAT plan. In the present study, various geomorphological parameters including drainage density ( $D_d$ ), Channel frequency ( $C_f$ ), Form factor ( $R_f$ ) and Circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ) indicative of runoff and erosional processes have been used as EHPs in Saaty's AHP method.

#### 5.7.8.1 Drainage density ( $D_d$ )

The drainage system shows the geomorphologic status of the region and an important indicator of the linear scale of land-form elements in stream eroded topography. If the drainage density in any watershed is more, it indicates that more water may go downstream as direct surface runoff if appropriate measures are not adopted. Also there may be more soil erosion because of entry of eroded soil in the drainage very soon after detachment. Therefore, in watershed management and planning, those areas should be treated on priority basis and both soil and water conservation measures are needed. For determination of drainage density of sub-watersheds, the drainage map of each sub-watershed prepared separately and using histogram, the total length of drainage may be obtained. The drainage density of sub-watershed may be estimated using area of that watershed in the following equation

$$D_d = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n L_i}{A} \quad \dots 5.46$$

Where,  $D_d$  is the drainage density ( $km/km^2$ ),  $L_i$  is the length of  $i^{th}$  segment of drainage,  $n$  is the number of segments and  $A$  is the catchment area of sub-watershed.

#### 5.7.8.2 Channel frequency ( $C_f$ )

The channel frequency is also an important factor depends upon geological and geomorphological development stage of the watershed. The channel frequency can be defined as number of channel found in unit area of the watershed (Horton, 1945).

#### 5.7.8.3 Form factor ( $R_f$ )

Horton (1932) defined the form factor ( $R_f$ ) as the ratio of basin area  $A$  to the square of basin length ( $L^2$ ). It is a dimensionless parameter and may be expressed as:

$$R_f = \frac{A}{L^2} \quad \dots 5.47$$

#### 5.7.8.4 Circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ )

The circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ) may be defined as the ratio of the basin area ( $A$ ) to the area ( $A_p$ ) of a circle having a circumference equal to the basin perimeter ( $L_p$ ) (Miller, 1953). The value of this ratio approaches one as the shape of the basin approaches a circle.

$$R_c = \frac{A}{A_p} \quad \dots 5.48$$

ILWIS 3.6, GIS has been used for determination of number & lengths of rivers of different orders, catchment area and perimeters of different sub-watersheds, which in turn were used for computation of various geomorphological parameters.

### 5.8 Development of Catchment Area Treatment (CAT) Plan

The catchment area treatment (CAT) plan for any water resources deals with identification of different types of soil erosion, mechanics, quantification, identification of erosion prone areas, priority fixation, development of scientific plan and assessment of impact of management plan. The CAT plan pertains to preparation of a management plan for treatment of erosion prone area of the catchment through biological and mechanical measures. However, a comprehensive CAT plan should also include the social dimensions associated directly or indirectly with the catchment. The drainage line treatment is very important and most relevant aspect for arresting the soil erosion and checking the velocity of runoff, harnessing the rainwater lost through drains and impounding them through various soil and water conservation measures would result in improving the water resources of an area. In agriculture and forest areas, construction of check dam, gully plug and boulder bunds helps in conserving moisture and preventing soil erosion. In case agriculture areas, check dam helps in harvesting the runoff, which could be recycled for life saving irrigation to mitigate drought. Gully plugs are constructed for deposition of silt carried by water, regulating excess runoff and reducing velocity of water. Drains such as field drains remove excess water and salts from the field. A well-designed and

maintained catchment area treatment plan helps in sustainable development of the catchment area while providing the appropriate soil and water conservation measures. The soil and water conservation measures required in CAT plan can be classified in to three broad groups as, mechanical measures, agronomic measures and biological measures being described below:

### **5.8.1 Mechanical measures**

Engineering/mechanical measures of soil and water conservation include various engineering techniques and structures constructed across the direction of the flow of rainwater with the objective of division of long slopes in to a series of shorter ones in order to reduce the velocity of runoff water thereby reduce the soil and water losses. Mechanical protection measures (engineering measures) are the first line of defense against soil erosion and water runoff. Agronomic measures (vegetative measures) provide second line of defense. Vegetative (agronomic) methods can usually control erosion if they are applied soon enough, but areas that have already been seriously damaged may need mechanical methods of repair. Soil and water conservation measures must be simple and low cost. The important principles to be kept in mind while planning mechanical measures are: (Haridas, V. R. 2005).

- a. Increasing the time of concentration of runoff and thereby allowing more runoff water to be absorbed and held by the soil.
- b. Intercepting a long slope into several short ones so as to maintain less than a critical velocity for the runoff water.
- c. Protection against damage due to excessive water runoff.

There are various mechanical measures of which some of the important measures are described below. It is always better to go for only the earthen structures with the locally available materials instead of high cost masonry structures.

#### **5.8.1.1 Check dam**

Check dam is a small barriers built across the direction of water flow on shallow rivers and streams (up to third order) with medium slopes. The structures will reduce runoff velocity, hence minimizing erosion and improving ground water recharging capacity and for the purpose of water harvesting. Ideally a check dam is located in a narrow stream with high banks. There are different types of check dams. Check dams range in size, shape and cost. It is possible to build them out of easily available materials. It is even possible to build some of these dams at a very little cost. Check dams are proposed where water table fluctuations are very high and the stream is influent or intermittently effluent. The catchment areas vary widely but an average area of about 25 ha should be there. The parameters needed to be considered for the construction of check dams are slope, soil cover and its thickness and hydrological conditions such as rock type, thickness of weathered strata, fracture, depth to the bed rock etc.

#### **5.8.1.2 Gully plug**

Gully Plugs are built using local stones, clay and bushes across small gullies and streams running down the hill slopes carrying drainage to tiny catchments during rainy season. Gully Plugs help in conservation of soil and moisture. The sites for gully plugs may be chosen whenever there is a local break in slope to permit accumulation of adequate water behind the bunds. Gully erosion occurs when the shape of the terrain concentrates water flow over or

through the land; and the soil is not cohesive enough to prevent soil loss. Gully erosion is best controlled by reducing water flow to it rather than by trying to stop erosion in the gully. The watershed programs in India mainly focus on gully control measures in soil and water conservation treatment plan.

#### **5.8.1.3 Boulder bund**

It is a temporary structure of 1.2 to 2.5 m deep and 6 m wide to stabilize the vegetative cover by holding some water and soil to facilitate the growth of vegetation. It is usually suggested for small and medium gullies where boulder / rubbles are available. A number of boulder / rubble checks along the lower order streams which are starting from higher elevation areas are suggested to arrest head ward erosion, soil loss and check the velocity of runoff of downstream.

#### **5.8.1.4 Percolation tank**

Percolation tank is an artificially created surface water body, submerging in its reservoir a highly permeable land so that surface runoff is made to percolate and recharge the ground water storage. Percolation tank should be constructed preferably on third to fourth order streams, located on highly fractured and weathered rocks, which have lateral continuity downstream. The recharge area downstream should have sufficient number of wells and cultivable land to benefit from the augmented ground water. The size of percolation tank should be governed by percolation capacity of strata in the tank bed. Normally percolation tanks are designed for storage capacity of 0.1 to 0.5 MCM. It is necessary to design the tank to provide a ponded water column generally between 3 & 4.5 m. The percolation tanks are mostly earthen dams with masonry structure only for spillway. The purpose of the percolation tanks is to recharge the ground water storage and hence seepage below the seat of the bed is permissible. For dam's upto 4.5 m height, cut off trenches are not necessary and keying and benching between the dam seat and the natural ground is sufficient.

#### **5.8.1.5 Farm pond**

Farm pond can be impounding ponds or excavation ponds and provide water supply for irrigation, livestock and drinking purposes. Impounding ponds hold a large amount of water above the ground surface. Selection of the pond site is one of the most important steps in construction. A good pond site contains level topography that provides for economical construction, soil with sufficient clay to hold water. Level topography will minimize the need for costly soil removal. Construct a pond that provides the largest volume of water with the least amount of landfill.

#### **5.8.1.6 Bench terracing**

Bench terracing is a mechanical method by which land surface is modified through construction of ridges, channels or change of land slope for control of soil erosion and moisture conservation. This practice is prevalent on the steep hill slopes (where agriculture has replaced forests and grasslands by human intervention). In the steep hill slopes, mere reduction of slope length by contour bunding may not be able to reduce the intensity of scouring action of runoff water. Here it is essential to modify the degree of slope. The material excavated from the upper part of the terrace is used in filling the lower part. By bench terracing, the original ground is

converted into level - step - like fields constructed by cutting and filling. This measure reduces the slope considerably. It also helps in the uniform distribution of soil moisture, retention of soil and manure and also in the better application of irrigation water.

#### **5.8.1.7 Contour bunding**

Contour bund is the most popular soil conservation measure in the country and is practiced on a large scale in different states. Contour bund consists of constructing narrow-based trapezoidal embankments (bunds) across the slope and along the contours (contour lines) of the fields on fields where the slope is not very steep and soil is fairly permeable to impound runoff water behind them so that all the impounded water is absorbed gradually into soil profile for crop use. A series of such bunds divide the area into strips and act as a barrier to the flow of water, as a result of which the amount of velocity of runoff are reduced, resulting in reduced soil erosion.

#### **5.8.1.8 Graded bunding**

Graded bunds consist of small bunds constructed with a slope of 0.1 to 0.4 % in order to dispose of excess water through the graded channels which lead to naturally depressed area of the land. These are recommended for area more than 600 mm rainfall having highly impermeable soils. The purpose of graded bunding is to make run-off water to trickle rather than to rush out. Graded bunding is restricted to 6 % slope and in specific cases it may be extended to a slope of 10 %. The height of bund should be at least 45cm and top width may vary with height of the bund. Grassed water ways are necessary to prevent erosion downstream and failure of the bunds.

#### **5.8.1.9 Land leveling**

Land leveling and farm bunding were the predominant form of land management practiced in watershed management. Land leveling helped in soil and water conservation. During heavy rainfall velocity of water was reduced due to leveled fields. This, ultimately, reduced the chance of soil erosion. When water started flowing slowly along the fields the infiltration augmented ground water level. Farm bunds were created to prevent erosion of top soil and to retain rainwater in the farms of cultivation.

### **5.8.2 Agronomic measures**

Agronomic measures of soil and water conservation help in reducing the impact of raindrops through interception and thus reduce splash erosion. These practices also help in increasing infiltration rate and thereby reduce runoff and overland flow. Reduction in runoff and soil losses is achieved through land management practices and associated agronomic practices. The plant canopy protects the soil from the impact of the rain drop and the grasses and legumes produced dense sod which helps in reducing soil erosion and the vegetation provides organic matter to soil.

#### **5.8.2.1 Contour forming**

This consists in carrying out different agricultural operations like ploughing, planting and inter-culture in horizontal lines across the sloping land. Such practices help in retaining rainwater and retarding erosion. These measures are effective when land slope is about 2% and less. The ridges and furrows, and the rows of the plants placed across the slope form a continuous layout of miniature reservoirs and barriers to the water moving along the slope. The barriers are small



individually, but as these are large in number, their total effect is great in reducing the run-off, soil erosion and loss of plant nutrients. This is non-monetary and simple practice. This practice helps in conserving rain water, reducing erosion and enhancing crop productivity.

#### **5.8.2.2 Strip cropping**

It consists of growing erosion-permitting crops (jawar, bajra, maize) in alternate strips with erosion-checking close growing crops (grasses, pulses). Strip cropping includes several good farming practices include crop rotation, contour cultivation, and proper tillage and cover cropping and is a very effective means for controlling soil erosion, especially in gently sloping lands.

#### **5.8.2.3 Contour strip cropping**

Contour strip cropping is the growing of alternate strips of suitable widths with erosion permitting and erosion preventing crops across the slopes on contour. Contour strip cropping shortens the length of the slope, checks the movement of run-off water, helps to de-silt it and increases the absorption of rainwater by the soil. Further, the dense foliage of the erosion resistant crop prevents the rain from beating the soil surface directly. A strip of close-growing vegetation placed perpendicular to the flow of water or wind can provide protection to an adjacent strip of row crop or of fallow land. It is a cheap and effective method of soil and water conservation, especially for large holdings. Often a crop rotation is practiced by alternating the crops grown on the various strips. Several different applications of this practice are known as contour strip-cropping, border strip-cropping, buffer strip-cropping, field strip-cropping.

#### **5.8.3.4 Vegetative barriers**

Vegetative barriers may be the most cost-effective means of soil and water conservation on small farms. This is especially so when the costs of constructing bench terraces are high or soils are not suitable for mechanical treatment. Vegetative barriers are narrow, permanent strips of stiff stemmed, erect, tall, dense perennial vegetation established in parallel rows and perpendicular to the dominant slope of the field. Dense vegetation raised across the slope, makes a live bund. The live bunds help to reduce the length of field slope, check the run-off velocity, improve the soil moisture, control the soil erosion and trap the silt up to some extent. It is a cheaper and permanent measure. There is need for making a suitable choice of plants for the live bunds. The plants that can be grown as vegetative barriers are *Jatropha*, *Glyricedia*, cactus etc.

#### **5.8.3.5 Grassed waterway**

Grass waterways are used where the risk of channel erosion would be excessive if the area was cultivated. The need for a grass waterway should be recognized and acted upon early because it is much easier to prevent a gully from forming than it is to repair the land later. The easiest way to establish a grass waterway is simply to leave that portion of the field un-ploughed when other crops follow hay or pasture. This will work, only when close-growing perennial crops are included in the rotation and where the land is properly shaped for a waterway. Otherwise the land must be prepared and seeded, sodded, or planted with cuttings. An ideal waterway is either concave or V shaped. The V shape is preferred where the bottom of the waterway dries out slowly (it minimizes the area that stays wet). Either shape should be made broad enough to cross and must be large enough to carry the maximum probable runoff.

### **5.8.3.6 Mulching**

Mulch is simply a protective layer of a material that is spread on top of the soil. Mulches can either be organic such as grass clippings, straw, bark chips, and similar materials or inorganic such as stones, brick chips, and plastic. The use of organic mulches has the advantage of minimizing the impact of rain drops and controlling splash, reducing evaporation, controlling weeds, reducing soil temperature during day time, encouraging microbial growth and adding nutrients to the soil.

### **5.8.3.7 Land preparation**

Land preparation including post harvest cultivation and preparatory tillage, influences intake of water in the soil and obstruction to surface flow. Ploughing at right angles to the direction of slope is best for soil and water conservation. The formation of appropriate seed beds/ridges and furrows matching to the spacing requirements of the crops will control erosion and increase water use efficiency.

## **5.8.4 Biological measures**

Biological measures are preferred in catchment area treatment plan as they are eco-friendly, sustainable and cost effective. The underlying principle here is that soil erodes only if it is bare and expose to erosive forces and if the soil can be kept under a permanent or near-permanent cover of vegetation, then little or no erosion will occur. The soil is protected as the energy of plants or percolating down to the water table. A great range of biological conservation measures have been develop and used. In case of grazing land, this can simply amount to ensuring that the land is never over grazed and that sufficient cover is always retained to protect the soil. For crop land, the problem is more complicated as it is difficult to cultivate without exposing the land to the wind and rain for at least part of the year but mulches can be used.

### **5.8.4.1 Agroforestry**

Agroforestry is a system that combines the production of trees with agricultural crops, animals and other resources simultaneously or sequentially on the same unit of land. The positive effects of tree on soil include, amelioration of erosion, primarily through surface litter cover and under story vegetation, maintenance or increase of organic matter and diversity through continuous degeneration of roots and decomposition of litter, nitrogen fixation, enhancement of physical soil properties such as soil structures, porosity and moisture retention due to the extensive root system and the canopy cover and enhanced efficiency of nutrient use because the tree-root system can intercept, absorb and recycle nutrients in the soil that would otherwise be lost through leaching.

### **5.8.4.2 Grazing management**

The various method of controlled grazing include, early versus deferred grazing wherein the deferred grazing is postponing or delaying grazing to enable the vegetation to grow well and produce abundant seeds for the regeneration of grazing lands; rotational grazing which includes the year long grazing in blocks and components with the aim to give rest to part of the land and hence provide full opportunity for the vegetation to grow and develop well; deferred rotational grazing aims at achieving both objectives of providing grazing to domestic livestock and providing rest to grazing land for regeneration.

#### **5.8.4.3 Afforestation**

Afforestation is the growing of forests where there is no forests earlier like abandoned cropland, pastureland, or grasslands, due to adverse factors such as unstable soil or aridity. In various arid, tropical and sensitive areas, once the forest cover is destroyed, the land quickly dries out and becomes inhospitable to new tree growth. Other critical factors include over grazing by livestock and over-harvesting of forest resources.

#### **5.8.4.4 Reforestation**

Reforestation is the re-establishment of the forest either naturally or artificially after its removal, or planting more trees. Reforestation is carried out on land where trees have been recently removed due to harvesting or natural disasters such as fire, land slide, flooding or volcanic eruption.

### **5.8.5 Methodology for development of CAT plan**

The scientifically developed CAT plan may be able to arrest degradation of lands through capture the flow of water on slopes and prevent the transportation of soil from higher level to that of lower level, the water harvesting structures are store the water and improve the ground water strata. The CAT plan aims with the preparation of a management plan for treatment of erosion prone area of the catchment through biological, mechanical or agronomic measures. The CAT plans were prepared by overlaying the various thematic and base maps using ILWIS GIS software. The land use map obtained from digital image analysis of RS data, soil, hydro-geomorphology, slope and sub-watershed themes were built as raster features, whereas streams and roads were built as line features. All the thematic maps were overlaid in GIS environment and suitable conservation measures and sites for mechanical measures have been identified using the criterions given in Table 5.3 and. The areas suitable for different agronomic measures may be determined using *cross* facility of Raster operation in ILWIS. The slope, land use and soil map have been crossed and an attribute table can be created to define various agronomic measures considering soil and slope for agriculture land. This attribute table can be used to generate a map showing the suitable areas for various agronomic measures. The biological measures may be used in barren and open forest with less density for generation of a source of income for rural population. In the PDS report, the design of check dams has been presented because of involving hydrological and engineering aspects.

### **5.9 Design of Check Dams under CAT Plan**

The check dam is a permanent structure constructed to reduce the velocity of flow and provide an opportunity for settling down the sediment concentration. Before designing check dam, it is necessary to conduct a detailed survey of the stud area for determination of river width, hard rock level, upstream and downstream slope and highest flood level (H.F.L.). The design aspects of concrete check dams consists of estimation of design discharge, section of dam, afflux, floor depth, floor thickness and length of loose apron etc (Fig. 5.2).

Table 5.3: Criteria adopted in suggesting soil and water conservation measures

Structure	Slope (%)	Drainage	Soil	Land use/ Land cover	Geomorphological land form	Advantage
Bench Terracing	6-10%	–	Shallow Soil not having permeability	Agriculture Field	Steep slope, low rainfall	Uniform impounding of water, Reduced the existing steep slope to mild slope.
Contour Farming	2-10%	–	Alluvial and black deep lateritic soils	Agriculture Field	Area where runoff is 10% of precipitation lower point of natural Depressions	Prevention of soil erosion, increased supply of moisture to the plant, control flash floods
Strip Cropping	< 3	–	All type	Agriculture Field	Gently sloping land	Shortening length of slope , reducing velocity of runoff,
Land leveling	any slope	–	Non Shallow Soil		Agricultural Land with rainfall	Reduce the velocity of water, reduced the chance of soil erosion
Check dam	more than 3%	3 <sup>rd</sup> order & higher stream	Sandy Gravel zone	waste land on either bank, forest land	Buried pediment	Surface water harvesting life irrigation, Drinking water facility, partially recharges structure.
Vegetative barriers	Perpendicular to the dominant slope less than 10%	–	All type	Agriculture Land	On crop land fields where water or wind erosion is a problem, or where water to be needs conserved.	Facilitate benching of sloping topography, reduced surface runoff, divert runoff to a stable outlet, provide wildlife habitat
Farm Pond	1-2%	–	Semi Pervious to impervious, All soil except in light textured soils	Single crop area	Area where runoff is 10% of precipitation lower point of natural depressions.	Life saving irrigation , drinking water for live stock horticulture development recharge to ground water
Boulder Bund	2-3%	1st to 3nd	severe soil erosion semi pervious to pervious	Single crop area	Buried pediment (M),Buried pediment (S),Buried pediplain, pediment	Soil conservation runoff retardant, delay recharge of water, Recharge to ground water.

Contd...

Gully Plug	2-3%	1st to 2nd	Soil erosion	Forest and waste land	pediment, Buried pediment (S)	Soil conservation runoff retardant structure's soil moisture, recharge to ground water.
Structure	Slope (%)	Drainage	Soil	Land use/ Land cover	Geomorphological land form	Advantage
Percolation tank	2-3 %	3rd to 4th	Semi pervious to pervious	waste land	Buried pediment fractured and weathered rock zone	Induced artificial drinking water, well in downstream.
Surface dykes	1-3%	higher order stream defined banks	thick sand/ gravel cover below river bed up to impervious stratum	waste land on either bank	Buried pediment, Buried pediplain	Induce percolation of river flow during flood through pervious recharge in surrounding region rise in ground water
Contour Bund	1-6%	–	All type except deep clayey soils	Agricultural land	steep slope, low rainfall	Reduced soil loss, increase infiltration time, reduced velocity of flow
Graded Bunding	0.1-0.4%	–	Clay soil even with lesser rainfall	Agricultural land	on crop land fields where water or wind erosion is a problem as where water to be needs conserved	Acts primarily as drainage channels for reducing and regulating the excess runoff water and draining the same with a mild and non erosive velocity.

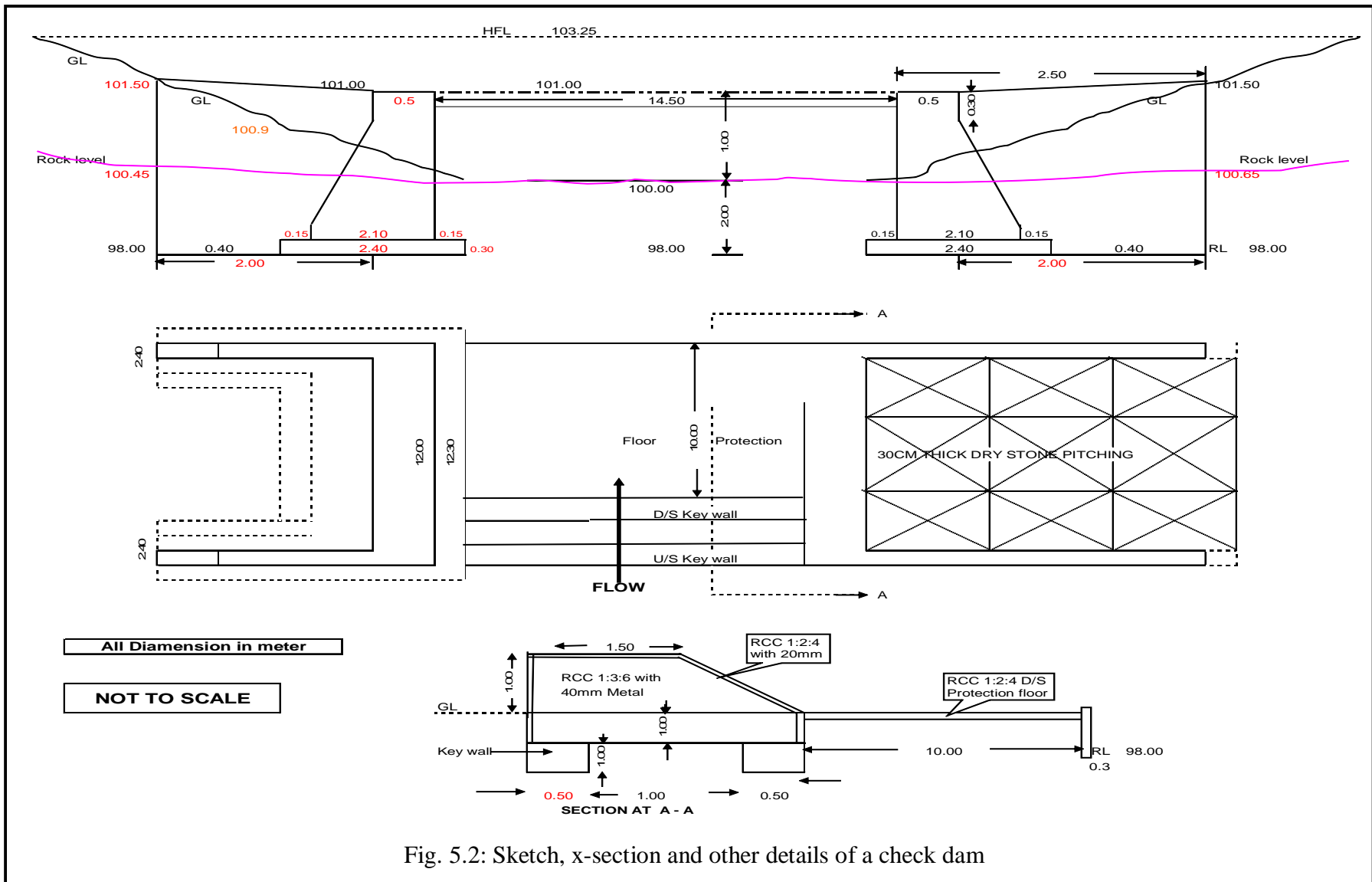


Fig. 5.2: Sketch, x-section and other details of a check dam

### 5.9.1 Design flood

The check dams have been proposed on small tributaries of river Koadr where gauging data are not available and discharge calculation through unit hydrograph is not possible. Hence, the following the highest value obtained from following three methods has been considered the design flood.

#### i-By using Dicken's formula

$$Q = CM^{3/4} \quad \dots 5.49$$

Where,  $Q$  is the discharge in  $m^3/sec$ ,  $C$  is a constant equal to 18.0 for the study area and  $M$  is the catchment area in  $km^2$ .

#### ii-Rainfall intensity based criteria

In this criterion, runoff due to rain fall of 0.75 cm/hour for 24 hours can be adopted for the catchment up to 500  $km^2$ . In case of catchment area more than 500  $km^2$ , the rainfall intensity is to be increased to 1.5 cm/hour for 24 hours. The following equation may be used to compute the flood discharge:

$$Q = 2.0833A \quad \text{for catchment up to } 500 \text{ km}^2 \quad \dots 5.50$$

$$Q = 4.1667A \quad \text{for catchment more than } 500 \text{ km}^2 \quad \dots 5.51$$

#### iii- Manning's equation at observed HFL

In this method, Manning's equation is used to compute velocity at H.F.L., which in turn employed to estimate the flood discharge. According to Manning's equation, the flood discharge is the product of area and velocity. The velocity can be computed using following equation.

$$V = \frac{1}{n} R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \quad \dots 5.52$$

where,  $V$  is the flow velocity in  $m/sec$ ,  $n$  is Manning's constant,  $R$  is hydraulic mean depth equal to the ratio of wetted area and wetted perimeter and  $S$  is slope. The highest of above three are considered the designed flood estimation.

### 5.9.2 Afflux

For computation of afflux in meter, the maximum value obtained from following three criterions has been used.

#### i- At the maximum flood discharge

$$H = \left[ \frac{V^2}{2g} + 0.015 \right] \left[ \frac{A^2}{a^2} - 1 \right] \quad \dots 5.53$$

Where,  $H$  is the afflux in  $m$ ,  $V$  is the velocity at maximum flood discharge ( $m^3/sec$ ),  $A$  is the total area up to H.F.L ( $m^2$ ),  $a$  is the obstructed area ( $m^2$ ) and  $g$  is the acceleration due to gravity ( $m^2/sec$ ).

**ii- At the discharge, when the flow in virgin nalla is at the level of proposed check dam-crest and all gate open**

In that condition, the equation 5.53 is used and velocity is computed Manning's equation using bed slope and cross section of nala up to top of the check dam.

**iii- When gates are closed and discharges in virgin nalla is at the level of proposed anicut/stop-dam-crest**

Under this condition, check dam may be assumed to behave as broad crested weir and following equation can be used to compute afflux ( $H$ ).

$$Q = CLH^{3/2} \quad \dots 5.54$$

Where,  $C$  is the constant and taken as 1.65 for broad crested weir,  $L$  is the length of weir.

**5.9.3 Upstream and downstream cutoff depth**

For computation of upstream and downstream cutoff depth is computed on the basis of scour depth. The downstream scour depth ( $D_{sd}$ ) is calculated using following equation:

$$D_{sd} = 1.374 \left[ \frac{q_d^2}{f} \right]^{1/3} \quad \dots 5.55$$

Where,  $D_{sd}$  is downstream scour depth in m,  $q_d$  is the designed discharge per unit width that can be computed as  $q_d = 1.2[Q/(P - 2R)]$ ,  $P$  is the wetted perimeter,  $R$  is the hydraulic mean depth for obstructed area up to H.F.L. and  $f$  is Lacy's silt factor may be taken as 1.674. The upstream scour depth ( $D_{su}$ ) is computed as 1.2 times of downstream scour depth. Also, a check is made that both the levels should follow the following criteria with nala bed level ( $NBL$ ).

$$D_s \leq NBL - 2.00 \quad \dots 5.56$$

**5.9.4 Dam section**

The design of dam section consists of estimation of top width, height, side slopes, floor length and floor thickness. The top width ( $T_w$ ) of the check dam is considered as maximum of the following criterion.

i. As per Irrigation and water power Engineering by Punmia

$$T_w \leq \frac{d}{\rho^2} \quad \dots 5.57$$

where,  $T_w$  is the top width,  $d = HFL - CL$ ,  $CL$  is the crest level and  $\rho$  is the density of masonry in  $t/m^3$ .

ii. From sliding criteria

$$T_w \leq 3 * d / 2 * \rho \quad \dots 5.58$$

For practical purposes, the upstream face is generally kept vertical and downstream face in the slope of 1:3 for small check dams. The height of the dam is equal to the difference of crest level and river bed level.

The floor length ( $L$ ) for check dam is computed using maximum of the following criterion based on maximum operating head (afflux).



$$L = H / 0.11 \quad \dots 5.59$$

$$L = CL * H \quad \dots 5.60$$

The designed thickness of floor ( $T$ ) can be computed from the following equation:

$$T = 1.2H / (\rho - 1) \quad \dots 5.61$$

## 5.10 Application of SWAT Model

SWAT model is a continuous time model that operated on daily and sub-daily basis. Studies conducted earlier shown that the model is efficient in predicting runoff, sediment, agriculture chemical yields in gauged and un-gauged catchments (Srinivasan *et al.*, 1993, 1998; Srinivasan and Arnold, 1994; Cho *et al.*, 1995; Rosenthal *et al.*, 1995; Bingner, 1996; Bingner *et al.*, 1997; Peterson and Hamlett, 1998; Arnold *et al.*, 1999a,b; Tripathi *et al.*, 2003). SWAT model is an ARC GIS based distributed model and data on climate, soil, land use, management practice, topography etc. are required for preparation of model. The key procedures for application of SWAT model are given below:

- Load or select the ArcSWAT extension
- Delimited the watershed and define the HRUs
- Edit SWAT databases (optional)
- Define the weather data
- Write the default input file
- Edit the default input files (optional)
- Setup and run SWAT (Specify the simulation period, ET calculation method etc)
- Apply a calibration tool (optional)
- Analyze, plot and graph SWAT output (optional)

### 5.10.1 Preparation of Data Base for SWAT Model

The SWAT model requires both static and dynamic data. The static data consists of contour map, drainage map, soil map, land use map with detail properties of soil and weather generator data, while dynamic data includes climatic data consists of rainfall, temperature, wind speed etc. and hydrological data includes observed runoff, sediment and chemical concentration in water at the outlet. In the study, the SWAT model has been applied on Koma G/D site where gauging of runoff and sediment have been carried out and after calibration and validation the model will be applied for whole Kodar reservoir catchment. The documentation on SWAT model is available in ARCSWAT\_Documentation.pdf in ArcSWATHELP folder when the model is installed in computer. The example data and formats for input files are available in Example Data folder.

The digital elevation model (DEM) or prepared sub-watershed map can be used for delineation of sub-watersheds in ARC GIS interface of SWAT model. The contour map or DEM, drainage map, watershed map, soil map and land use map can be used for generation of hydrological response units (HRUs). The long term meteorological data on monthly basis are required for generation of weather generation sub-model in SWAT. The weather generator is used for generation of requisite meteorological data during model setup and run. The weather generator consists of the site specific location and elevation details, mean, standard deviation of maximum and minimum temperature on monthly basis. Monthly mean, standard deviation,

skewness of monthly rainfall, probability of wet day following by a dry day, probability of wet day following by a wet day, average no. of precipitation days and maximum 0.5 hour rainfall, average daily solar radiation, average dew point temperature and average daily wind speed are also required for weather generator. The meteorological data of Raipur has been used for preparation of weather generator data.

The contour maps obtained from 1:50,000 Survey of India topo-sheets may be used for preparation of DEM of the study area. The land use map for Kodar reservoir catchment has been generated from digital image classification of LISS IV data obtained from IRS P6 satellite. The soil maps for the study area has been prepared from the maps given by All India Soil and Land Use Survey, India and soil testing carried out in the catchment.

### **5.10.2 Generation of Sub-basin and HRUs**

The first level of sub division in SWAT model is sub-basin. Sub-basins possess a geographic position in the watershed and are spatially related to one other. The sub-basin delineation may be obtained from sub-watersheds boundaries that are defined by surface topography so that entire area within a sub-basin flows to the outlet. A sub-basin carries at least one HRU, a tributary channel and a main channel or reach. In SWAT model either user defined sub-basins with drainage or digital elevation model (DEM) can be used for extraction of watershed and sub-basins. The HRUs are the basic modeling unit in SWAT model and each sub-watershed consists of multiple HRUs having unique area of land cover, soil and slope classification. Hydrologic response units are portions of sub-basins that possess unique land use/management/soil attributes. An HRU is not synonymous to a field. Rather it is the total area in the sub-basin with a particular land use, management and soil. So after adding land cover, soil and slope maps generation of HRUs for each of sub-watersheds as per limiting values assigned by the users is the first step towards modeling in SWAT model. The details of HRUs within each sub-watershed can be seen in the *HRU Analysis Report* menu.

### **5.10.3 Writing, Editing and Rewriting of SWAT input files**

After creating HRUs in SWAT model, the next step is to provide data for weather station. SWAT requires daily precipitation, maximum/minimum air temperature, solar radiation, wind speed and relative humidity. The values of all these parameters may be read from records of observed data or they may be generated. The weather generator data file contains the statistical data needed to generate representative daily climate data for sub-basins. Ideally, at least 20 years of record are used to calculate parameters in weather generator (.wgn) file.

The selection of files for weather station follows the *Write All* command, which executes the writing of all important files required for simulation run of SWAT model. In write operation different files including configuration file (.fig), soil data file (.sol), weather generator data (.wgn), subbasin general data (.sub), HRU general data (.hru), main channel data (.rte), groundwater data (.gw), water use data (.wus), management data (.mgt), soil chemical data (.chm), pond data (.pnd), stream water quality data (.swq), septic data (.sep), operations data (.ops), watershed general data (.bsn), watershed water quality data (.wwq) and master watershed file (.cio). Initially, all these files are written with default values of different parameters of hydrological modeling. Therefore, options of editing these parameters in their respective files are available in '*Edit SWAT Input*' menu. In the menu, database, point source discharges, inlet

discharges, reservoirs, subbasin data and watershed data can be edited. With the help of 'Database' menu, user defined weather generator, soil, land use, fertilizers, pesticides, tillage, urban and septic WQ data can be added to the data base of SWAT model. In this menu various parameters can be edited in graphical user interface, where description of parameters and their ranges are available. After editing the required parameters of SWAT model, rewriting of files with the help of 'Rewrite SWAT Input Files' sub menu in 'Edit SWAT Input' menu are necessary to change these parameters in respective files. After rewriting the files, model is ready for simulation. As SWAT model contains several parameters affecting the hydrological processes of nature, it is necessary to restrict no. of parameters which can be optimized for obtaining satisfactory results with the help of sensitivity analysis.

#### **5.10.4 Sensitivity Analysis**

Sensitivity analysis limits the number of parameters that need optimization to achieve good correlation between simulated and measured data. The method of analysis in the SWAT model called ParaSol is based on the method of Latin Hypercube One-factor-at-a-Time (LHOAT). ParaSol method combines the objective functions into a global optimization criterion and minimizes both of them by using the Shuffled Complex (SCE-UA) algorithm (van Griensven et al., 2006). The sensitivity analysis in SWAT model can be carried out with or without observed data. Before carrying out the sensitivity analysis, a simulation run may be conducted with default parameter values. The simulation run has been used as default directory and various parameters of flow, sediment and water quality parameters can be selected along with their lower, upper ranges and variation method for sensitivity analysis. In the sensitivity analysis, one by one each factor is taken into consideration and its value is changed by replacement, multiply by a percent or added by some value. The final result of sensitivity analysis give a list of parameters along with their ranking where the parameter with a maximum effect obtains rank 1, and parameter with a minimum effect obtains rank which corresponds to the number of all analyzed parameters. Parameter that has a global rank 1, is categorized as "very important", rank 2 to 6 as "important", rank 7 to 41 as "slightly important" and rank 42 (i.e. flow 27) as "not important" because the model is not sensitive to change in parameter (Van Griensven et al., 2006).

#### **5.10.5 Calibration of SWAT Model**

The model calibration is performed for setting up the parameter values of a simulation model to predict the runoff or other outputs from rainfall and other inputs with certain degree of accuracy. The calibration of a watershed model, especially a conceptual one, is complicated by the fact that values for a large number of parameters or coefficients must be estimated (Jacomino and Fields, 1997; Srinivasan et al., 1998; Motovilov et al., 1999; Carrubba, 2000). After creating new SWAT project, the HRUs have been generated for Koma G/D and Kodar reservoir catchments. The calibration has been done for Koma G/D site where discharge and sediment data for the year 2010 have been collected by WRD, Raipur. After generating the HRUs, weather generator station which were created after setting up SWAT model were loaded and all the files were written with default values. In calibration process, various model parameters modified one by one and after rewriting the files, the SWAT model run was executed. The results of model run were saved and exported to Excel file and compared with observed data. The Nash-Sutcliffe efficiency ( $\eta$ ), root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral squared error (*ISE*), relative error in

peak (*REP*) and graphical representation etc. may be used to judge the model performance during calibration.

#### **5.10.6 Validation of SWAT Model**

Validation of any model is carried out by simulation of model with calibrated model parameters using independent set of data which was not used in calibration. The validation of SWAT model has been carried out using independent data of meteorology including maximum and minimum temperature, humidity, rainfall, runoff and sediment data of year 2011. The simulation run was made with calibrated parameters and the results were saved and exported to Excel file for comparison with observed data. As used in calibration, Nash-Sutcliffe efficiency ( $\eta$ ), root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral squared error (*ISE*), relative error in peak (*REP*) and graphical representation etc. may be used to judge the model performance during validation.

#### **5.11 Impact Assessment Analysis**

Four general factors influence the magnitude of erosion and sedimentation are climate, soils, topography, and land cover. The frequency, intensity, quantity and duration of rainfall affect soil erosion and sediment transport. Even low-intensity rainfall will induce runoff in areas where soils are easily saturated. Different types of soil have different susceptibilities to erosion. Soil erodibility varies with soil texture (particle size distribution), organic matter content, and structure (particle aggregation). Soils rich in silts and in very fine sands are relatively erodible, while those rich in clay are less erodible. A fine-textured soil with granular structure is the least erodible. Slope length and slope steepness influence soil erosion and greater slope length below the point where runoff begins tends to increase the depth and velocity of runoff, and thus will detach more soil particles. Cover vegetation absorbs the energy of falling raindrops, provides a physical barrier to particle movement, binds the soil in place with roots, and extracts water from the soil to increase its absorptive capacity. The best management practices (BMP) refer to a variety of agronomic, biological and mechanical conservation measures to minimize the production and transport of sediments. Erosion and sedimentation can be reduced in three general ways:

- (1) Stopping or minimizing erosion from disturbed areas by conservation measures
- (2) Controlling the erosive impacts of increased or concentrated runoff
- (3) Minimizing opportunities for sediments to be transported to streams

From the detailed survey of the study area of Kodar reservoir catchment, it has been observed that presently no or very minimum conservation measures to control soil erosion have been taken place. It is therefore necessary to suggest a suitable conservation plan for the catchment and its impact on soil and water regime in the region. The procedure for assessment of impact of BMP on sediment, water quality or runoff in SWAT model includes the following:

- Simulation with base line data
- Identification of target area
- Selection of BMP
- Simulation with changing parameters
- Comparison the results with base line simulation

Before carrying out impact assessment analysis, considering the present status of watershed, a simulation run with base line data for the watershed can be made and the resultant runoff, sediment and water quality can be saved as baseline data for comparison. The targeted

areas in the watershed may be the areas of high erosion, excessive slope, environmentally stressed areas with concentrated development activities. The priority sub-watersheds or whole basin can be selected as target area for implementation of BMP. Various BMPs can be selected depending upon the goals required to be achieved from implementation of soil conservation measures. According to a BMP, the set of parameters need to be changed in different inputs. For example, to minimize channel bank erosion, it is necessary to implement channel stabilization or riparian buffer and/or filter strip may be added in *hru* file by giving the width of filter strip. Some BMPs have been given in Table 5.4 including agronomic and mechanical measures for soil and water conservation. After changing the necessary parameters in their respective files, these files are needed to be rewritten and simulate the run again and save it as another scenario. The comparison of runoff, sediment or water quality parameters with base line results can be made to see the impact of implementation of BMPs using SWAT model.

Table 5.4: Some Best Management Practices for control of erosion

S.N.	Conservation measures	Purpose	Selection criteria	Name of Variable affected	File of model
1.	Stream bank stabilization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce sediment load in stream</li> <li>• Maintain channel capacity</li> </ul>	Main stream	CH_COV CH_EROD	.rte .rte
2.	Gully plug	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce ephemeral gully erosion</li> <li>• Reduce velocity of flow</li> <li>• Trap sediment</li> <li>• Stabilize steep slopes</li> </ul>	Sub basin with slope more than 5%	CH_N1	.sub
3.	Conservation or recharge structure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase groundwater recharge</li> <li>• Facilitate sediment settling</li> </ul>	-	CH_K1 CH_N1	.sub .sub
4.	Conservation tillage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce erosion</li> <li>• Moisture conservation</li> </ul>	All croplands	EFFMIX, DEPTIL, CN2	.mgt .mgt .mgt
5.	Terraces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce overland flow and conduct runoff to a safe outlet</li> <li>• Reduce sheet erosion</li> </ul>	All croplands	CN2, P-factor	.mgt
6.	Manure incorporation	-	All waste application field	FRT_SURFACE	.mgt

CN2: Initial SCS runoff curve number for AMC II, CH\_COV: Channel cover factor, CH\_N1: Manning's N value for tributary channel, EFFMIX: Mixing efficiency of tillage operation, FRT\_SURFACE: Friction of fertilizer applied to top 10 mm soil, CH\_EROD: Channel erodibility factor, CH\_K1: Eff. Hydraulic conductivity in tributary channel, DEPTIL: Depth of mixing by tillage operation

\*Source: SWAT Advance manual, Texas A&M Agrilife, Texas, USA

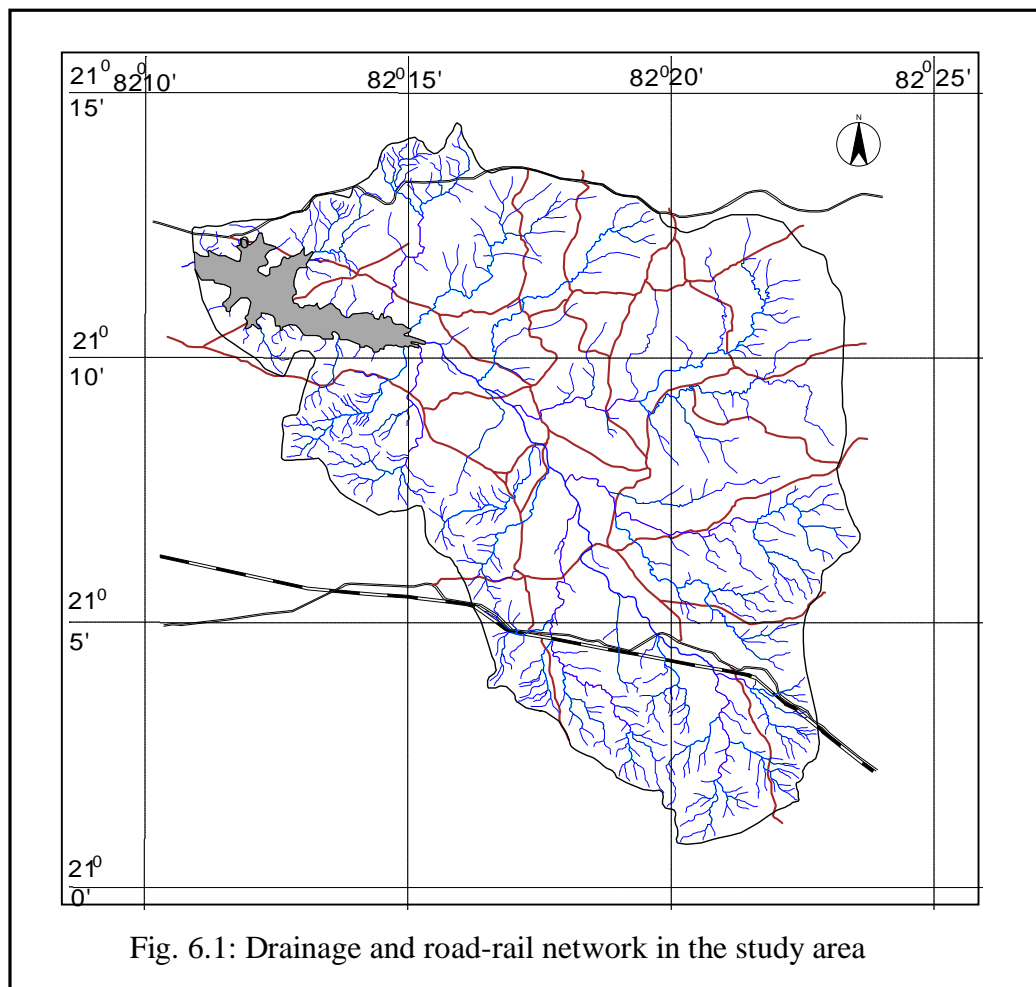
## CHAPTER 6.0- ANALYSIS OF RESULTS

### 6.1 Creation of GIS Database

For scientific analysis and detailed study, the collection and analysis of available data is important to understand the cause and the magnitude of problems. The GIS based data base of Kodar reservoir catchment has been prepared using ILWIS GIS software consists of various themes including drainage, contours, digital elevation model, road and rail network, villages, geology, geomorphology; soil etc. The ARC GIS has been used for preparation of various thematic maps for SWAT modeling.

#### 6.1.1 Drainage and road rail network map

The drainage map of the Kodar catchment has been prepared from survey of India topo-sheets 64 K/4 and 64K/8. The drainage map of the Kodar dam catchment has been presented in Fig. 6.1. The Kodar dam has been constructed on river Kurar near Kowajhar village in Mahasamund district. The river Kurar is the fifth order stream as per Strahler's classification system. The catchment of Kodar reservoir lies between  $80^{\circ} 10'N$  to  $80^{\circ} 25'N$  longitude and  $20^{\circ} 0'E$  to  $20^{\circ} 15'E$  latitude. The road network of the study area consisting of all major roads in the catchment of Kodar reservoir is given in Fig. 6.1. National highways NH-6 & NH-215 pass through the study area and rail network consists of single line BG rail line from Raipur to Vishakapattanam. Most of the villages in the catchment of Kodar reservoir are connected by metal roads and transportation facilities are good.



### 6.1.2 Geology

The geology of the study area consists of old age granite and glauconitic quartz with few basic dykes in the upstream of Kodar river act as barrier of ground water flow. The geological map of the study area is presented in Fig. 6.2 and area under each category in Table 6.1. It has been observed that more than 96 % area of Kodar catchment has been covered by granite and ground water availability in these rocks are confined with faults and lineaments only. The availability of groundwater is poor in the catchment of Kodar reservoir.

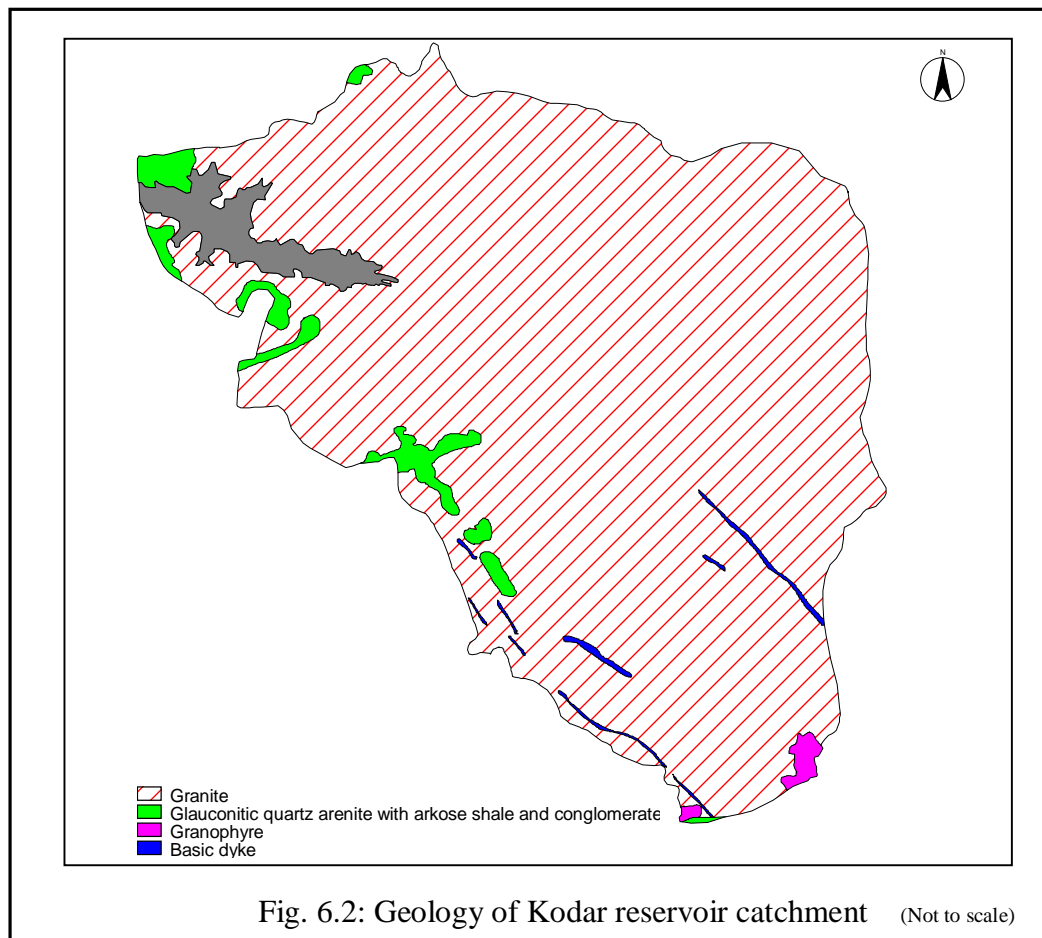


Table 6.1: Distribution of geological features in Kodar catchment

S.N.	Geological unit	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Percentage
1.	Granite	296.45	96.34
2.	Glauconitic quartz Arenite with Arkose Shale and Conglomerate	8.32	2.70
3.	Basic dyke	1.64	0.53
4.	Granophyre	1.30	0.42
	Total	307.71	100.00

### 6.1.3 Geomorphology

The geomorphology map of the study area has been prepared using LISS III data of IRS P6 satellite. The tone, color, texture and association have been used to identify various geomorphological units in the catchment of Kodar reservoir. The Kodar catchment consists mainly pediplane buried moderate and pediplane weathered moderate with structural hills in the form of inselberg, mesa, butte and residual hills. The spatial distribution of different geomorphological units in the study area has been presented in Fig 6.3 and Table 6.2.

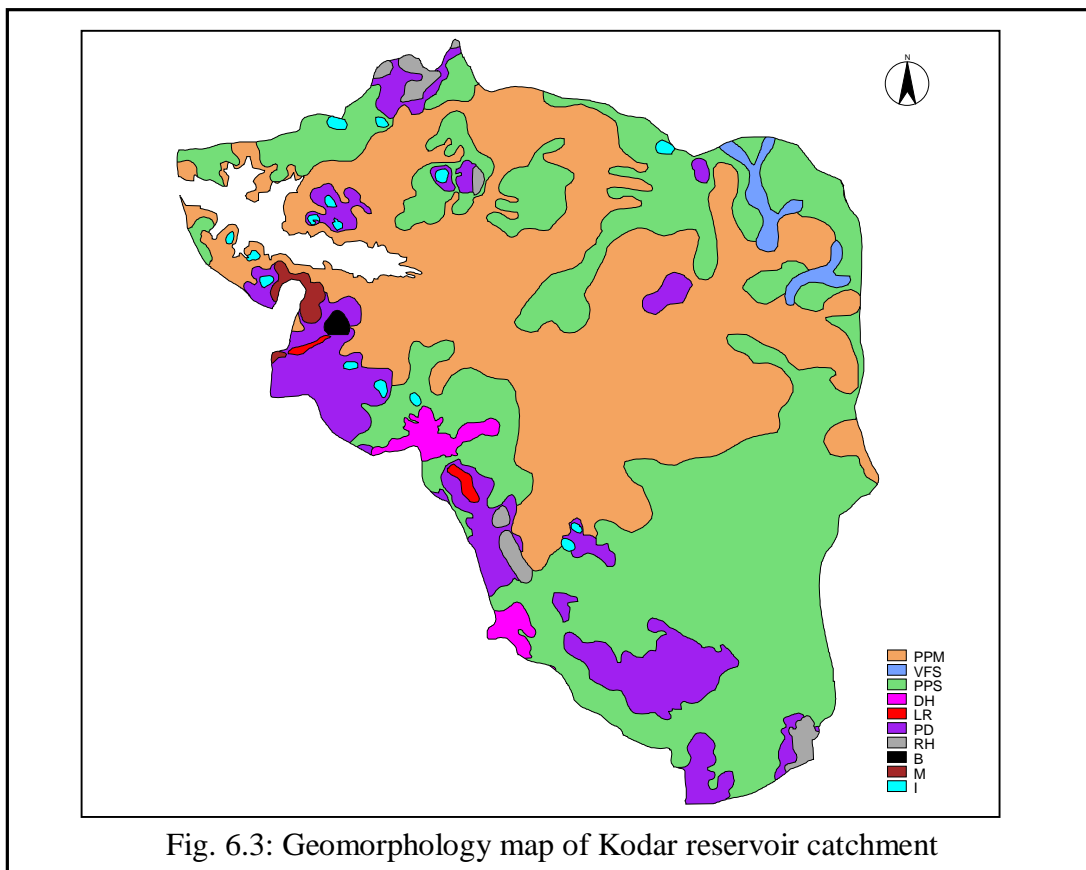


Fig. 6.3: Geomorphology map of Kodar reservoir catchment

Table 6.2: Geomorphological features present in Kodar catchment

S.N.	Geomorphological unit	Symbol	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Percentage
1.	Butte	B	0.49	0.16
2.	Denudational hills	DH	4.29	1.39
3.	Inselburg	I	1.79	0.58
4.	Linear ridge	LR	0.73	0.24
5.	Mesa	M	1.45	0.47
6.	Piedmont slope	PD	32.49	10.56
7.	Pediplane buried moderate	PPM	126.87	41.23
8.	Pediplane weathered shallow	PPS	132.16	42.95
9.	Residual hills	RH	3.75	1.22
10.	Valley fill shallow	VFS	3.68	1.20
	Total		307.71	100



### 6.1.4 Soil map

The soil map of the study area has been prepared from the soil map of National Bureau of Soil Survey & Land Use Planning (NBSS&LUP). The soils are mainly red and yellow color with low in necessary nutrients nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P) and potash (K) necessary for good agriculture yield. The soils in the study area are slightly deep to deep, well drained loamy soil and mixed loamy soil subjected to moderate to severe erosion. The soil map of the study area is depicted in Fig. 6.4. The areas of different soils present in the study area have been depicted in Table 6.3.

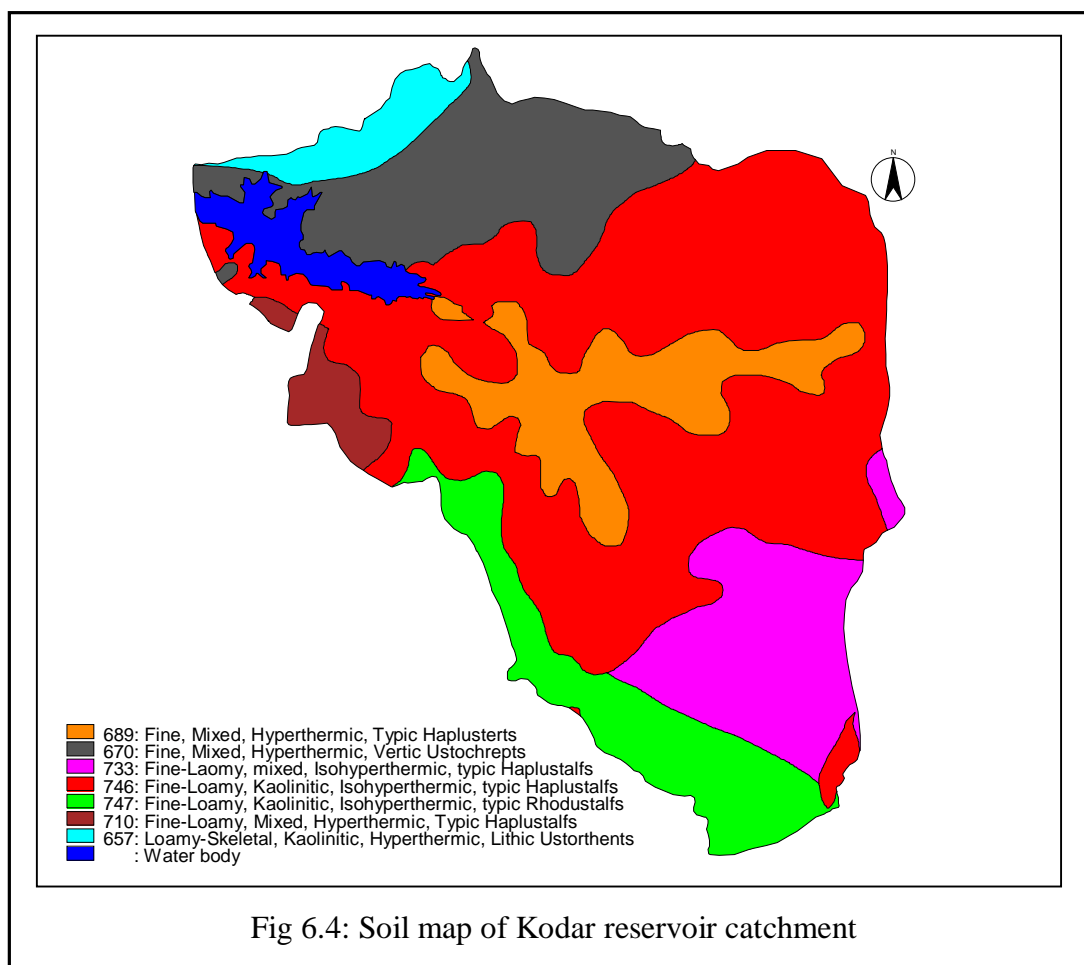


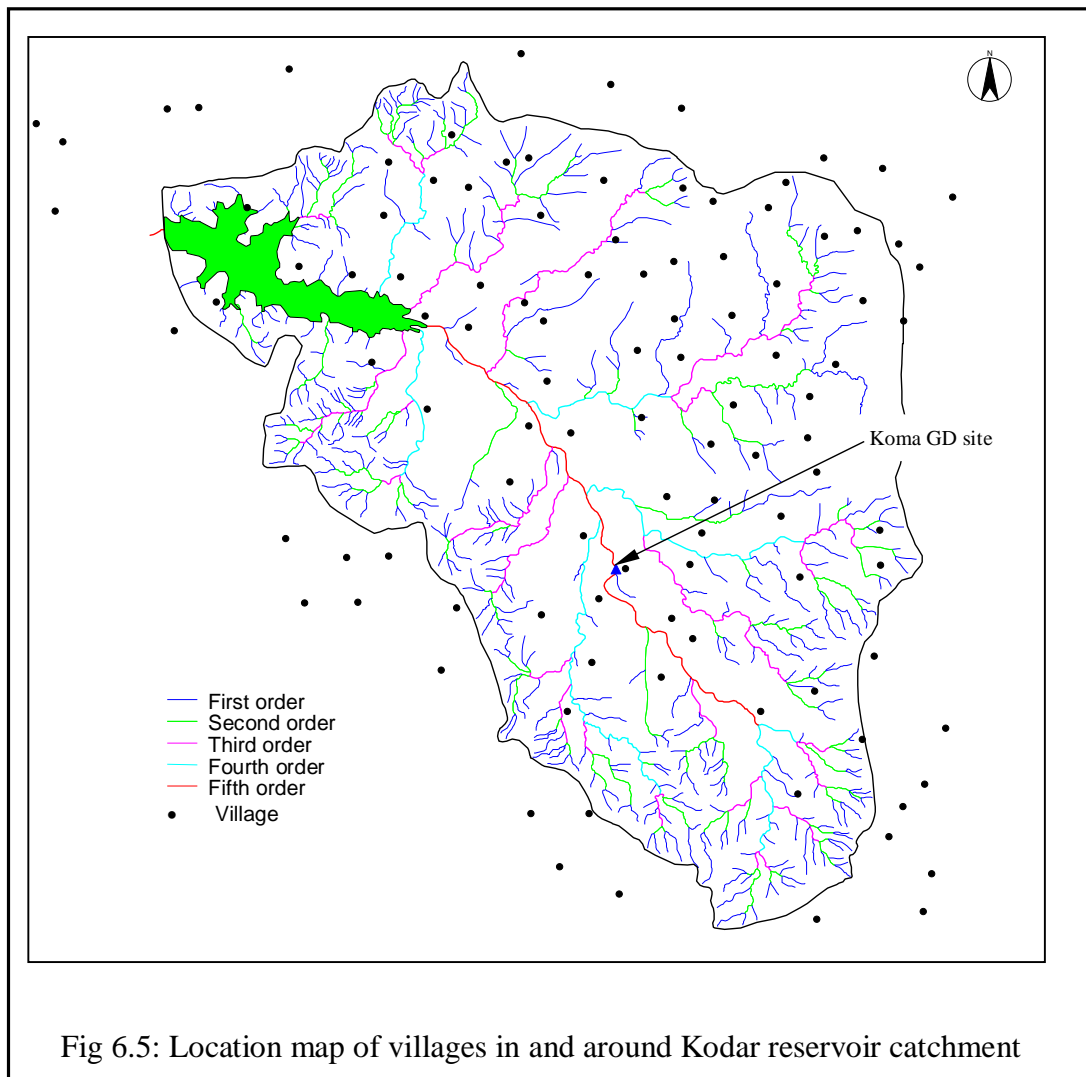
Fig 6.4: Soil map of Kodar reservoir catchment

Table 6.3: Soil types present in Kodar catchment

Soil unit	Code	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Percentage
Fine-Loamy, Kaolinitic, Isohyperthermic, typic Haplustalfs	746	147.99	48.09
Fine, Mixed, Hyperthermic, Vertic Ustochrepts	670	44.52	14.47
Fine-Laomy, mixed, Isohyperthermic, typic Haplustalfs	733	36.53	11.87
Fine, Mixed, Hyperthermic, Typic Haplusterts	689	31.30	10.17
Fine-Loamy, Kaolinitic, Isohyperthermic, typic Rhodustalfs	747	30.49	9.91
Fine-Loamy, Mixed, Hyperthermic, Typic Haplustalfs	710	7.25	2.36
Loamy-Skeletal, Kaolinitic, Hyperthermic, Lithic Ustorthents	657	9.62	3.13
Total		307.17	100

### 6.1.5 Village map

The village map for the catchment of Kodar reservoir has been prepared from the SOI toposheet and information from WRD, Raipur. The village map of Kodar catchment is given in Fig. 6.5. Many villages have been found in the middle reach and near Kodar reservoir. Koma, Patherpali, Saraipali, Khallari, Nawadih, Kherwar, Patewa, khallari etc are some of the important villages in the catchment. The agriculture is main occupation of people in the area and paddy is the main crop in kharif season. The farmers take paddy in rabi season where ground water availability is good.



### 6.1.6 Contour map

The contour map of the study area has been prepared from SOI toposheets and presented in Fig. 6.6. The general slope of the study area has been observed from south-west to north-east direction towards river Kodar. The elevation ranges from 280 m to 570 m. The general topography of the area consists of undulating plains, hilly track and localized valleys. The central part of catchment is more or less flat suitable for agriculture.

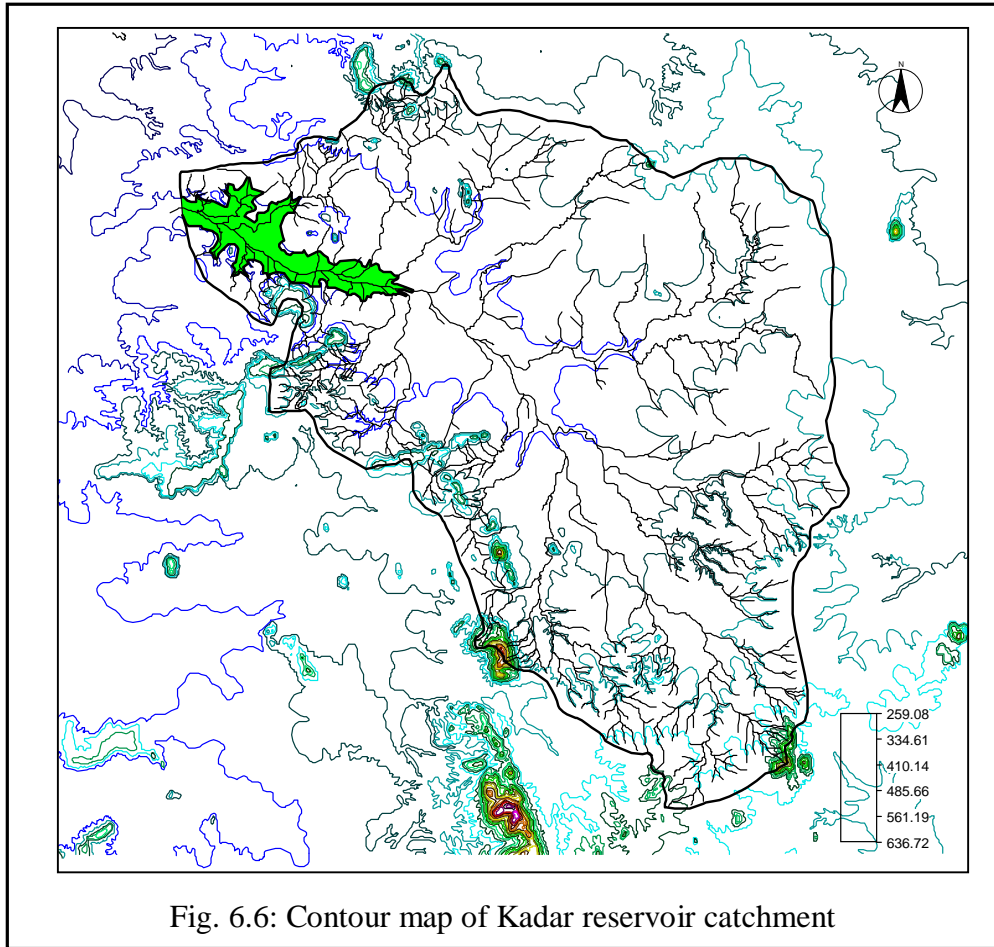


Fig. 6.6: Contour map of Kadar reservoir catchment

### 6.1.7 Digital elevation model (DEM) and shadow map

The digital elevation model for the study area has been generated using contour and point elevation maps. The contour interpolation of contour map and rasterize operation for point elevation has been performed to get two separate raster maps. The ‘iff’ statement of ILWIS has been used to combine both the raster maps to get the DEM. This map has elevation values for all the pixels in the area. Also, this DEM can be visualized in a three dimensional space by creating a 3D geo-reference. The digital elevation model of the study area has been presented in Fig. 6.7. A shadow map of the study area has been prepared and given in Fig. 6.8.

### 6.2 Up-gradation of Gauging and Sediment Sampling Site

An extensive survey of the study area has been made and a G/D site near Koma village has been selected for collection of sediment samples and measurement of discharge data. The site has been upgraded and sampling for discharge measurement and sediment data from 2010 to 2012 have been collected and analyzed.

### 6.3 Collection and Analysis of Meteorological Data

Meteorological data plays an important role for setting up various parameters in sedimentation and prioritization studies. In the present study rainfall data of five surrounding stations of Kadar reservoir have been collected. The thiesen polygon map for Kadar reservoir have been prepared and presented in Fig. 6.9.

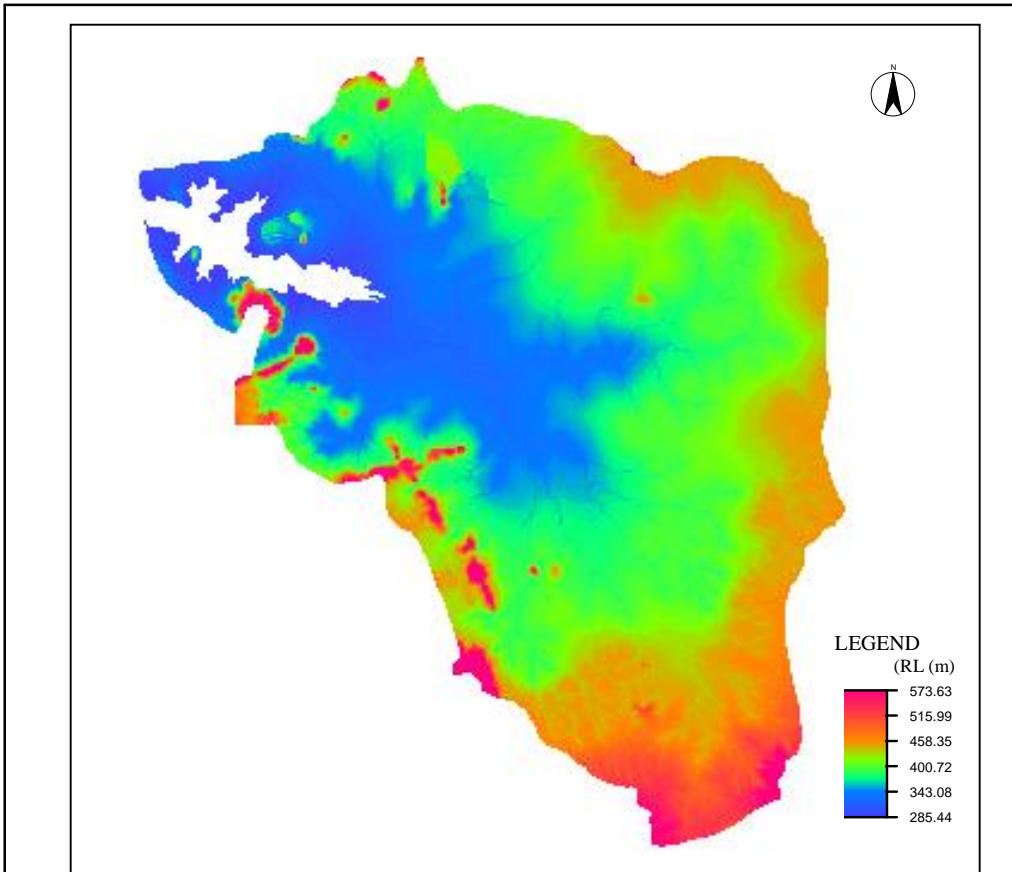


Fig. 6.7: digital elevation model for Kodar reservoir catchment

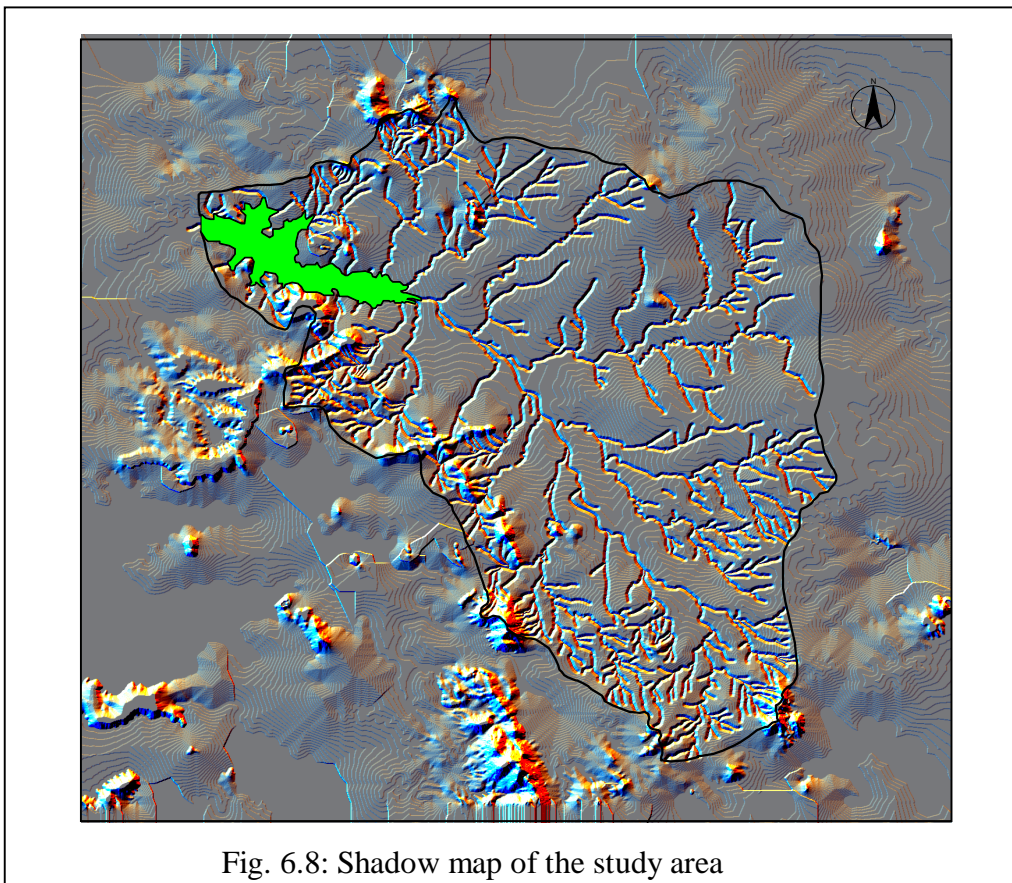
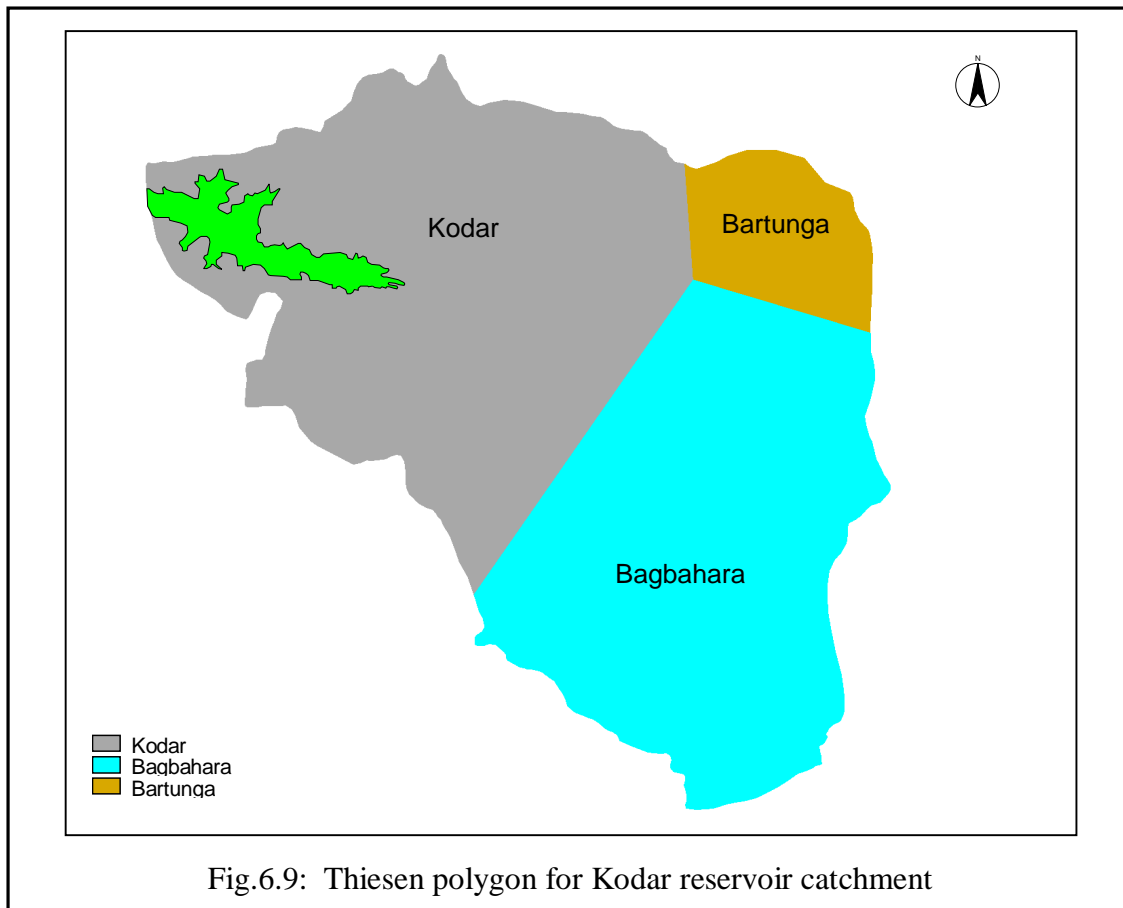


Fig. 6.8: Shadow map of the study area



From the analysis, it has been observed that Kodar, Bagbahara and Bartunga RG stations have impact on Kodar catchment and hence used for analysis. The weight of Kodar, Bagbahara and Bartunga RG stations has been computed as 0.50, 0.42 and 0.08 respectively. The statistical parameters including mean, standard deviation, coefficient of correlation for seasonal and monsoon months have been computed and presented in Table 6.4. The results of analysis suggested good correlation of seasonal rainfall between Bagbahara v/s Bartunga and Kodar v/s Bagbahara while least correlation in Kodar v/s Bartunga RG stations. The rainfall in the study area concentrated mainly in the month of July, August and September. The meteorological data of Raipur has been collected from Indira Gandhi Agriculture University, Raipur consists of daily minimum and maximum temperature, wind speed, relative humidity and sunshine hour from 1971 to 2012. The monthly average and standard deviation of each parameter has been computed. The mean monthly maximum temperature in the study area varies from 44.2 °C in the month of May to 24.1 °C in January. Similarly, mean monthly minimum temperature ranges from 8.4°C in the month of January to 28.6 °C in the month of June. The variation of mean monthly minimum temperature, maximum temperature, wind speed and relative humidity has been presented in Fig. 6.10.

#### 6.4 Sedimentation study of Kodar Reservoir

For estimation of revised capacities at different levels of Kodar reservoir, *NDWI*, *NDVI* and band ratio (*BR*) followed by slicing methods of image classification has been used to differentiate the water pixels from other land uses. Different selected remote sensing data has been purchased from National Remote Sensing Centre Hyderabad have been imported in ILWIS GIS and georeferencing of each scenes have been performed to extract revised area directly in sq. m.

Table 6.4: Seasonal and monthly statistics of rainfall for R.G. stations in Kodar catchment

a. Seasonal

Statistics	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Mean	910.00	893.54	970.90
St. deviation	303.23	285.51	368.48
Coeff. of Skewness	0.66	0.27	1.21
Maximum	1532.1	1438.3	1991.1
Minimum	476.0	456.4	466.0
Median	855.0	884.4	915.7
Coefficient of correlation			
	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Kodar	1.000	0.714	0.400
Bagbahara		1.000	0.817
Bartunga			1.000

b. June

Statistics	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Mean	139.26	173.55	190.70
St. deviation	126.78	118.96	141.18
Coeff. of Skewness	1.75	1.46	1.04
Maximum	474.7	496.3	481.0
Minimum	0.0	42.8	34.9
Median	114.0	162.2	148.0
Coefficient of correlation			
	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Kodar	1.000	0.910	0.708
Bagbahara		1.000	0.805
Bartunga			1.000

c. July

Statistics	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Mean	331.06	299.82	344.94
St. deviation	148.98	151.15	181.76
Coeff. of Skewness	0.23	0.62	1.64
Maximum	594.0	642.8	892.1
Minimum	70.0	71.2	70.0
Median	310.0	264.1	341.0
Coefficient of correlation			
	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Kodar	1.000	0.804	0.782
Bagbahara		1.000	0.907
Bartunga			1.000

d. August

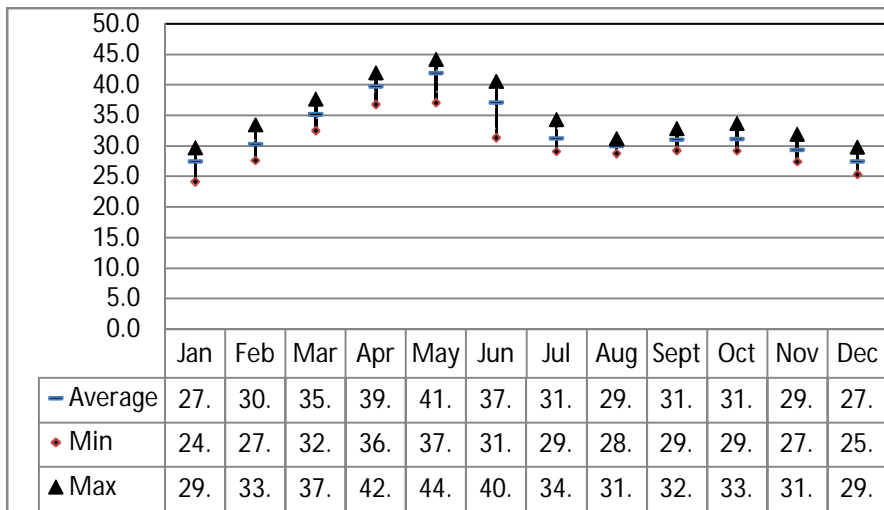
Statistics	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Mean	256.28	257.69	245.79
St. deviation	105.30	133.12	155.47
Coeff. of Skewness	0.80	1.76	0.67
Maximum	526.7	618.4	612.0
Minimum	91.0	126.2	0.0
Median	245.0	223.7	236.0
Coefficient of correlation			
	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Kodar	1.000	0.327	0.300
Bagbahara		1.000	0.690
Bartunga			1.000

e. September

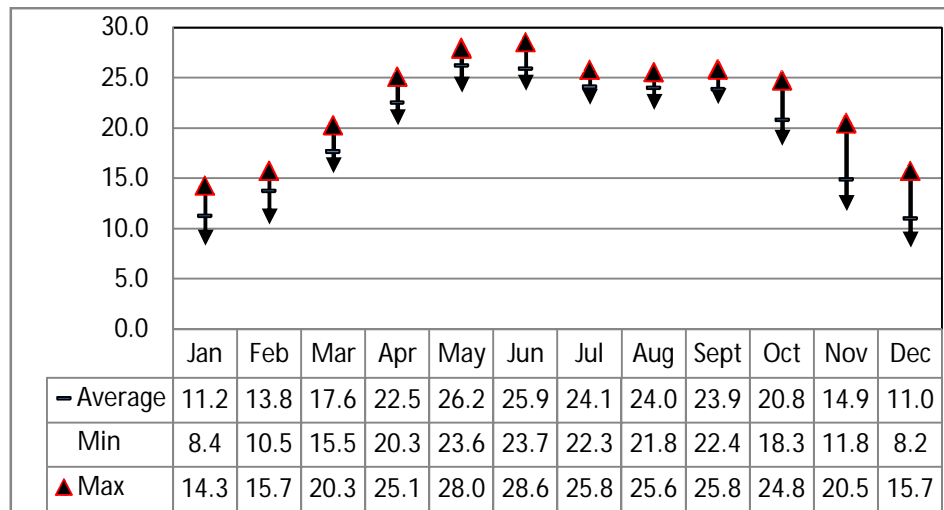
Statistics	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Mean	145.93	147.50	169.41
St. deviation	106.67	102.07	182.68
Coeff. of Skewness	0.83	1.67	2.68
Maximum	375.0	454.4	794.0
Minimum	16.0	12.6	18.0
Median	111.0	137.1	148.0
Coefficient of correlation			
	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Kodar	1.000	0.644	0.510
Bagbahara		1.000	0.871
Bartunga			1.000

f. October

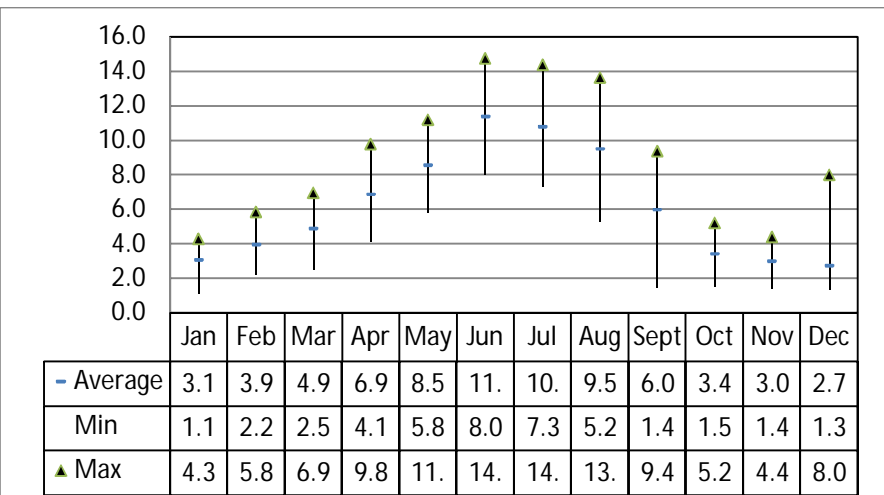
Statistics	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Mean	37.47	14.98	20.06
St. deviation	51.25	24.34	42.67
Coeff. of Skewness	2.12	1.18	2.81
Maximum	184.0	61.5	162.0
Minimum	0.0	0.0	0.0
Median	14.0	0.0	0.0
Coefficient of correlation			
	Kodar	Bagbahara	Bartunga
Kodar	1.000	0.642	0.330
Bagbahara		1.000	0.234
Bartunga			1.000



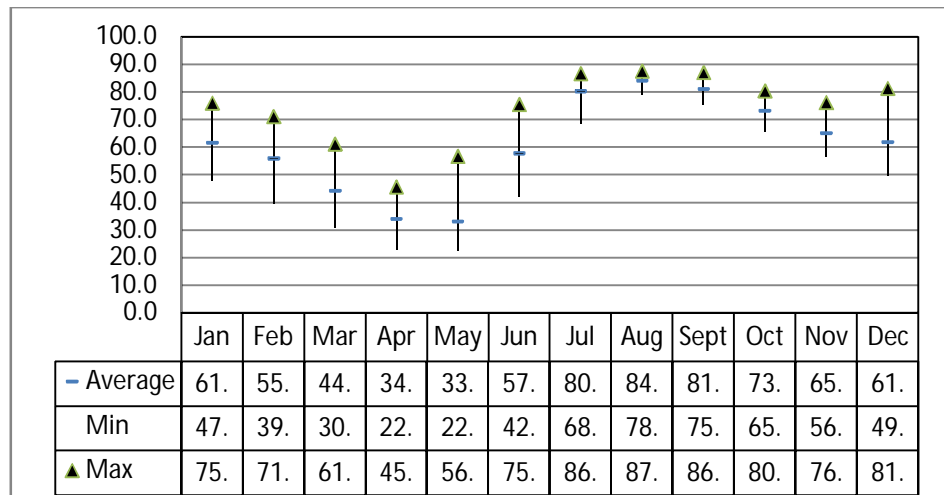
Mean monthly maximum temperature (°C)



Mean monthly minimum temperature (°C)



Mean monthly relative humidity (%)



Mean monthly wind speed (km/day)

Fig. 6.10: Variation of monthly maximum temperature, minimum temperature, relative humidity, wind speed

The False Color Composite (FCC) and masked out water spread of Kodar reservoir for few selected dates have been presented in Fig. 6.11. The satellite data at dead storage level (D.S.L.) i.e. 286.04 m and at full supply level (F.S.L.), i.e. 295.24 m were not available. To compute revised spread area on these levels, a graph has been plotted between reservoir elevation and revised water spread area. The best fit line using revised water spreads has been presented in Fig. 6.12. The following equation has been obtained for computation of revised water spreads area in sq. km. using reservoir levels (L) in m.

$$Area = 0.10132L^2 - 57.60799L + 8040.25633 \quad \dots 6.1$$

The revised water spreads at D.S. L. (286.04 m) and F.R.L. (295.24 m) have been computed as 4.301 km<sup>2</sup> and 26.088 km<sup>2</sup> respectively and using eq. 6.1. From the analysis, the revised bed level for Kodar reservoir has been worked out as 285.55 m. as compared to original river bed of 275.67 m. This indicated that the dead storage from 285.55 m to 275.67 m has been filled up with the sediment deposits. The revised storages between different levels have been worked out using revised water spread areas which ultimately gave revised cumulative capacities at these levels. The computation of revised volumes and percentage loss in volumes has been presented in Table 6.5 & 6.6. The original and revised capacity curves for Kodar reservoir has been depicted in Fig. 6.13. The sedimentation analysis of Kodar reservoir indicated that 24.94 Mm<sup>3</sup> of gross storages and 4.89 Mm<sup>3</sup> of dead storage have been lost in 32 years (1976-77 to 2008-09).

The revised capacity curve developed in the analysis may be used for reservoir operation and allocation of water for different uses. Considering the uniform loss in the storages, it can be concluded that 0.78 Mm<sup>3</sup> of gross storage and 0.15 Mm<sup>3</sup> of dead storage of Kodar reservoir have been lost each year with average rate of 0.25 Mm<sup>3</sup>/100 km<sup>2</sup>/year. The sedimentation rate computed from remote sensing approach has been compared with the Khosla's formula and Joglekar's equation (Mutreja, 1986 & Subramanya, 2008). These equations may be written as:

Khosla's formula

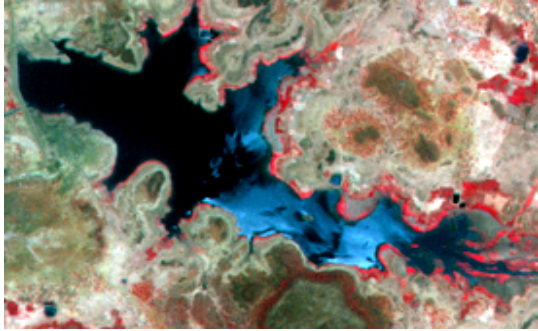
$$Q_s = \frac{0.323}{A^{0.28}} \quad \dots 6.2$$

Joglekar's equation

$$Q_s = \frac{0.597}{A^{0.24}} \quad \dots 6.3$$

where,  $Q_s$  is annual silting rate from 100 km<sup>2</sup> of watershed area (Mm<sup>3</sup>/100 km<sup>2</sup>/year) and A is the catchment area (km<sup>2</sup>). As the catchment area of Kodar reservoir is 307.17 sq. km, the rate of sedimentation has been computed from Khosla's formula and Joglekar's equation are 0.06 Mm<sup>3</sup>/100 km<sup>2</sup>/year and 0.15 Mm<sup>3</sup>/100 km<sup>2</sup>/year respectively. It has been proved that Khosla's formula gives rate of siltation on lower side, but the present rate of siltation in Kodar reservoir is more than the results obtained from Joglekar's equation. Therefore, it is necessary to take appropriate soil conservation measures in the Kodar catchment to reduce the intake of silt and sediment into Kodar reservoir. The prioritization of sub-watersheds for stressed sub-watersheds and scientifically developed CAT plan may be helpful to reduce the rate of siltation in Kodar reservoir. It may be recommended that all the major and medium reservoirs should be monitored regularly (5 years interval) using remote sensing approach.

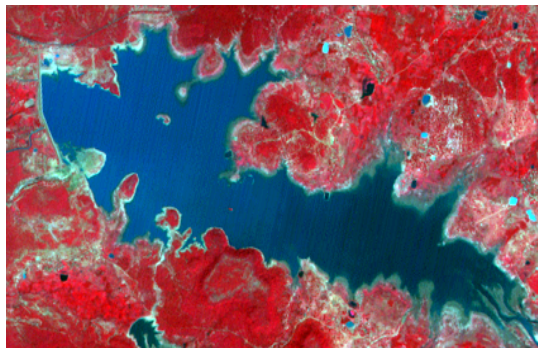
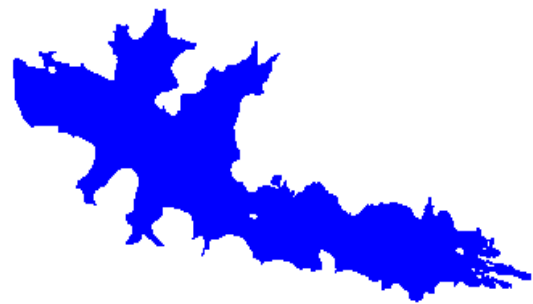




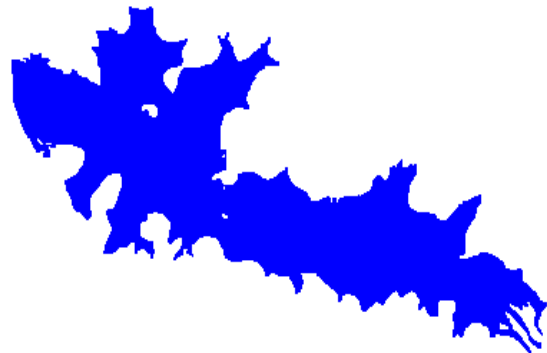
May 09, 2009 (Res. Level: 287.39 m)



Oct 29, 2008 (Res. Level: 289.37 m)



Oct 24, 2009 (Res. Level: 291.69 m)



Oct 11, 2007 (Res. Level: 295.16 m)

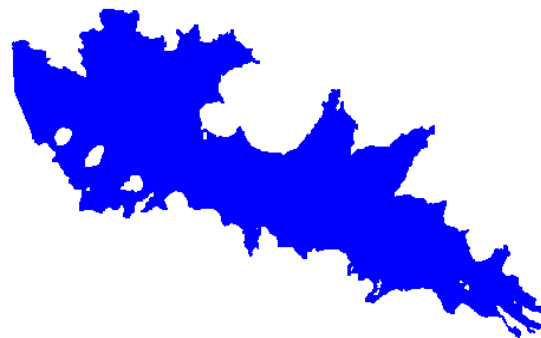


Fig 6.11: False color composite and extracted water spread on different dates for Kodar reservoir

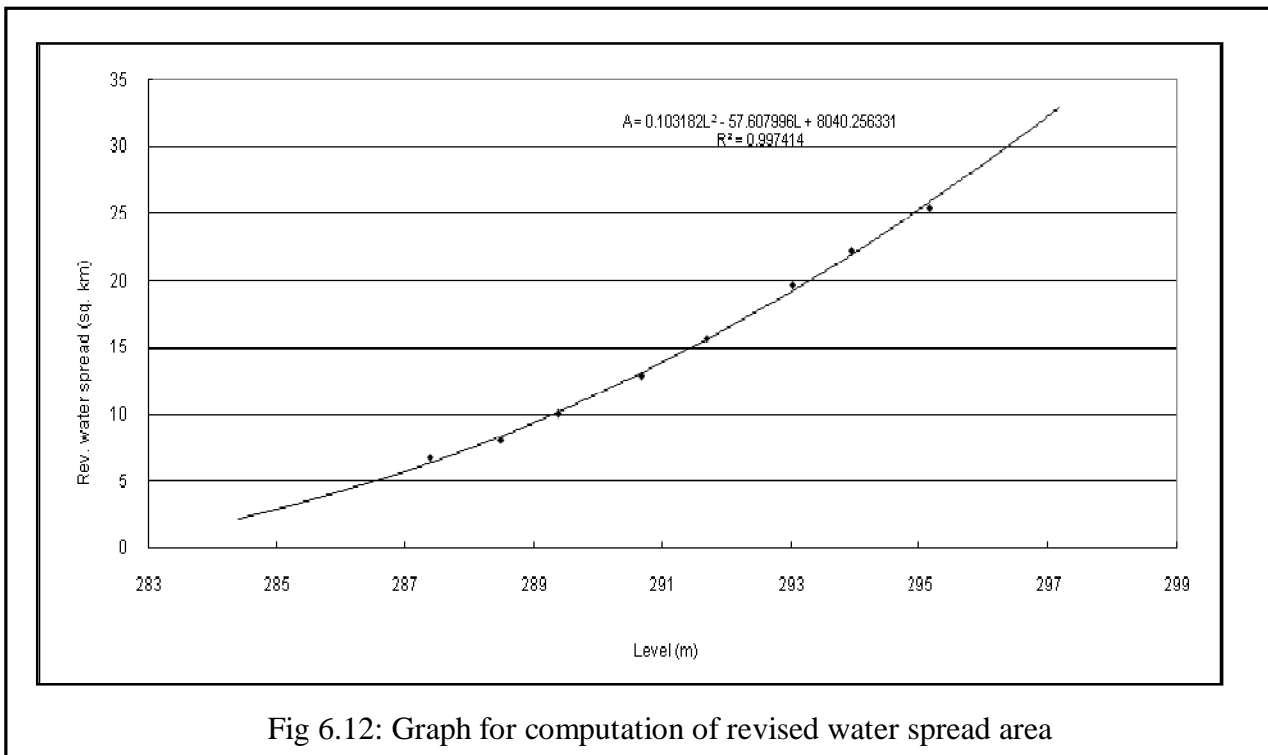


Fig 6.12: Graph for computation of revised water spread area

Table 6.5: Computation of revised volume in Kodar reservoir

Date of Pass	Reservoir Elevation (meter)	Revised Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Revised Volume (Mm <sup>3</sup> )	Original Cumu. Capacity	Original Volume (Mm <sup>3</sup> )	Loss in Volume (Mm <sup>3</sup> )	% Loss in Volume
Original River Bed	275.67			0			
Revised River Bed	281.55	0					
			6.444		11.330	4.886	43.12
DSL *	286.04	4.301		11.330			
			7.181		8.457	1.276	15.09
9-May-09	287.39	6.407		19.787			
			8.119		10.137	2.018	19.91
22-Mar-09	288.49	8.400		29.924			
			8.161		9.982	1.821	18.25
29-Oct-08	289.37	10.175		39.906			
			15.213		17.827	2.614	14.66
14-May-08	290.68	13.113		57.733			
			14.492		16.289	1.797	11.03
24-Oct-09	291.69	15.620		74.022			
			23.334		26.030	2.696	10.36
3-Mar-08	293.03	19.271		100.052			
			18.747		20.200	1.453	7.19
15-Jan-08	293.94	21.961		120.252			
			29.125		33.982	4.857	14.29
11-Oct-07	295.16	25.837		154.234			
			4.595		6.116	1.521	24.86
FSL *	295.337	26.088		160.350			

Table 6.6: Percentage loss in revised volume at different levels in Kodar reservoir

Reservoir Elevation (meter)	Original Capacity (Mm <sup>3</sup> )		Revised Capacity (Mm <sup>3</sup> )		Loss in Cum. Capacity (Mm <sup>3</sup> )	Percentage Loss in Cumulative Capacity
	Volume	Cumulative Capacity	Volume	Cumulative Capacity		
275.67 <sup>#</sup>		0				
281.55 <sup>##</sup>				0		
286.04 <sup>*</sup>	11.330	11.330	6.444	6.444	4.886	43.12
287.39	8.457	19.787	7.181	13.625	6.162	31.14
288.49	10.137	29.924	8.119	21.744	8.180	27.34
289.37	9.982	39.906	8.161	29.905	10.001	25.06
290.68	17.827	57.733	15.213	45.117	12.616	21.85
291.69	16.289	74.022	14.492	59.609	14.413	19.47
293.03	26.030	100.052	23.334	82.943	17.109	17.10
293.94	20.200	120.252	18.747	101.690	18.562	15.44
295.16	33.982	154.234	29.125	130.815	23.419	15.18
295.337 <sup>**</sup>	6.116	160.350	4.595	135.411	24.939	15.55

# Original river bed, ## Present river bed, \* Dead storage level, \*\* Full reservoir level

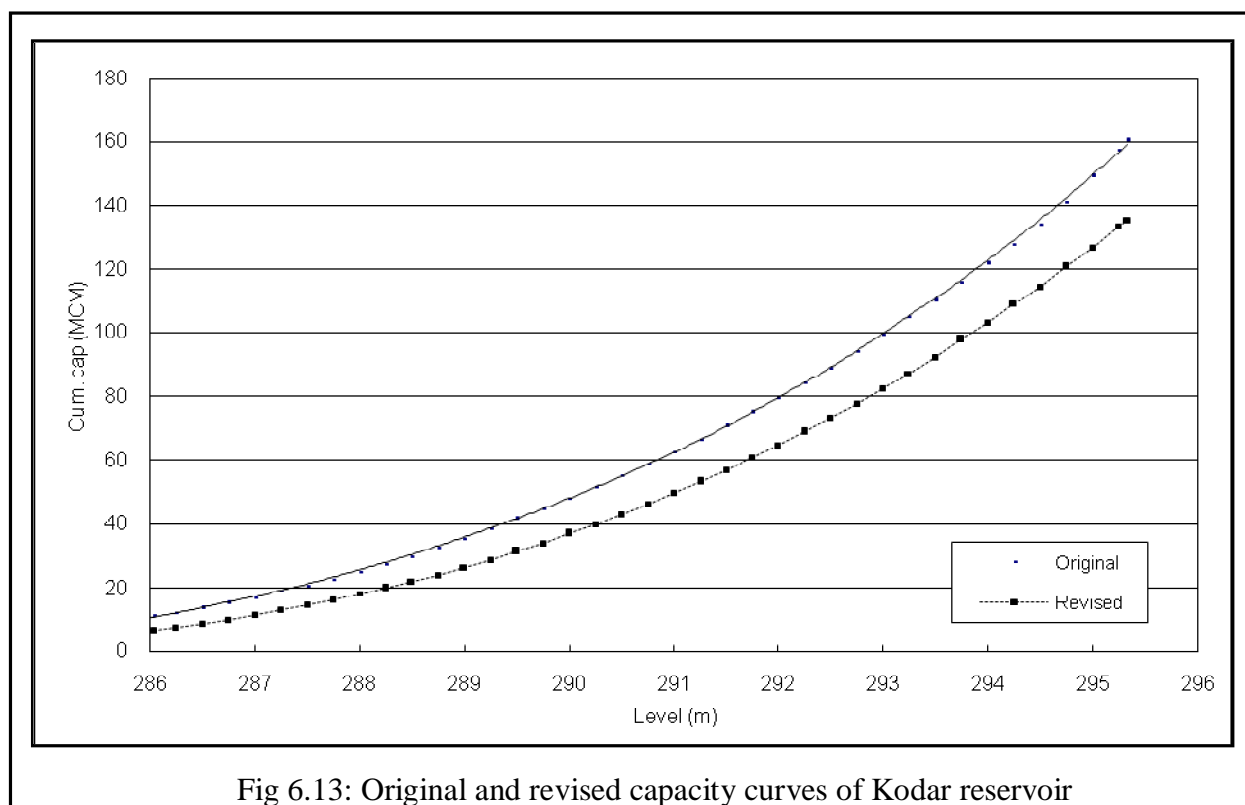


Fig 6.13: Original and revised capacity curves of Kodar reservoir

## 6.5 Land Use Classification

The land use classification of the study area has been performed using supervised classification technique of LISS IV data. Using spectral signatures of various land uses, sample sets for different land uses have been prepared. The maximum likelihood technique of classification has been used for generation of land use map of Kodar catchment. A field visit of the study area has been conducted for collection of field truth data and classified image was compared with the field information. The classified map of the study area has been depicted in Fig. 6.14, while area under different land uses has been presented in Table 6.7. From the analysis, it has been observed that the Kodar catchment is an agriculture watershed covering nearly eighty percent with agriculture and dense forest on the ridges only. Several small water bodies in the form of village tanks have been found in Kodar catchment which is used for bathing, cattle, recreation and other house hold work.

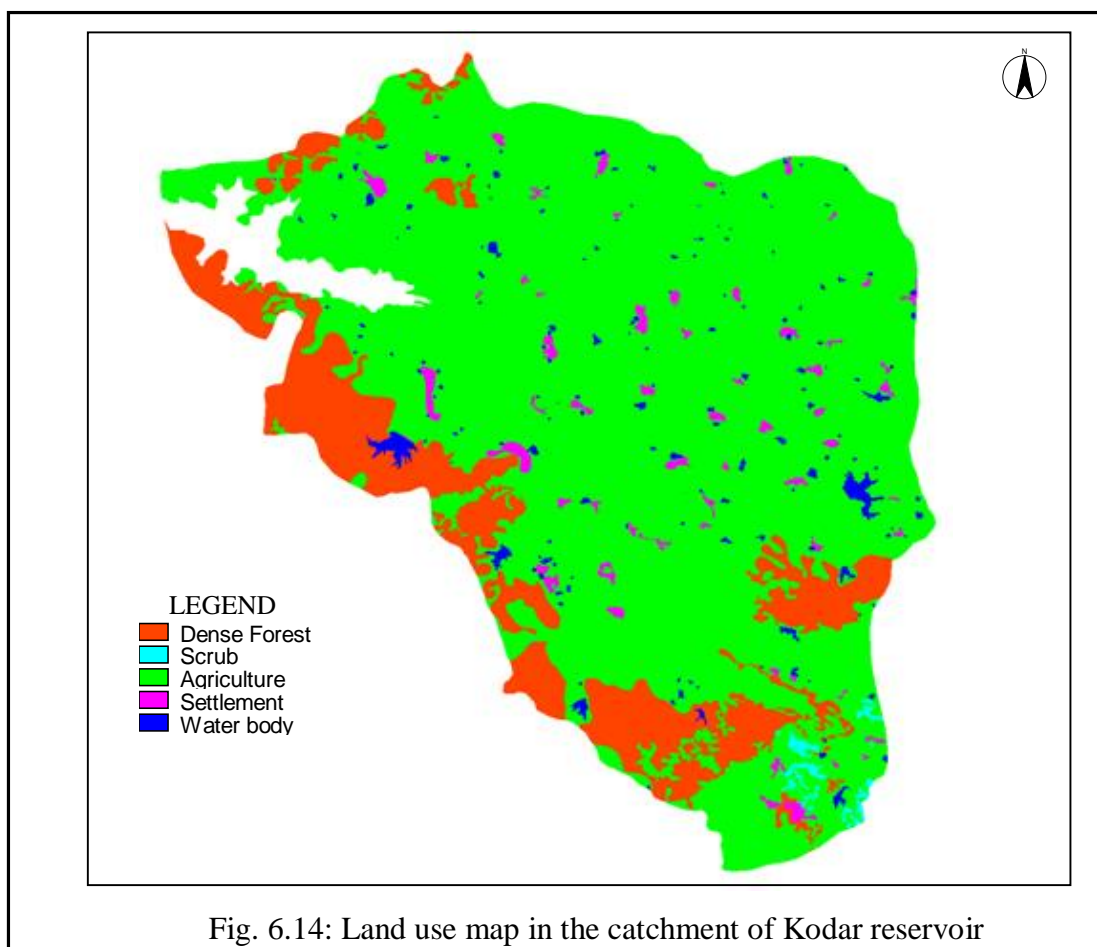


Table 6.7: Different land uses in Kodar catchment

S.N.	Land use	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Percentage
1.	Agriculture	243.86	79.39
2.	Dense Forest	48.38	15.75
3.	Scrub	1.22	0.40
4.	Settlement	7.88	2.57
5.	Water body	5.81	1.89
6.	Total	307.17	100.00

## 6.6 Results of Soil Investigation

The soil properties including soil texture (percent of silt, clay and sand), soil depth, infiltration capacity and hydraulic conductivity are important parameter for detachment and movement of soil from catchment and modeling. In the present study, considering the spatial distribution of various soils in the study area, detail soil investigation consisting of in-situ soil tests including infiltration test using double ring infiltrometer, saturated hydraulic conductivity test using Guelph permeameter, bulk density and dry density using core cutter method and laboratory tests consisting of textural analysis using sieve and pipette analysis and sp. gravity using density bottle have been conducted on eleven sites in Kodar reservoir catchment. The map showing Sites in the study area has been presented in Fig. 6.15 and their details in Table 6.8.

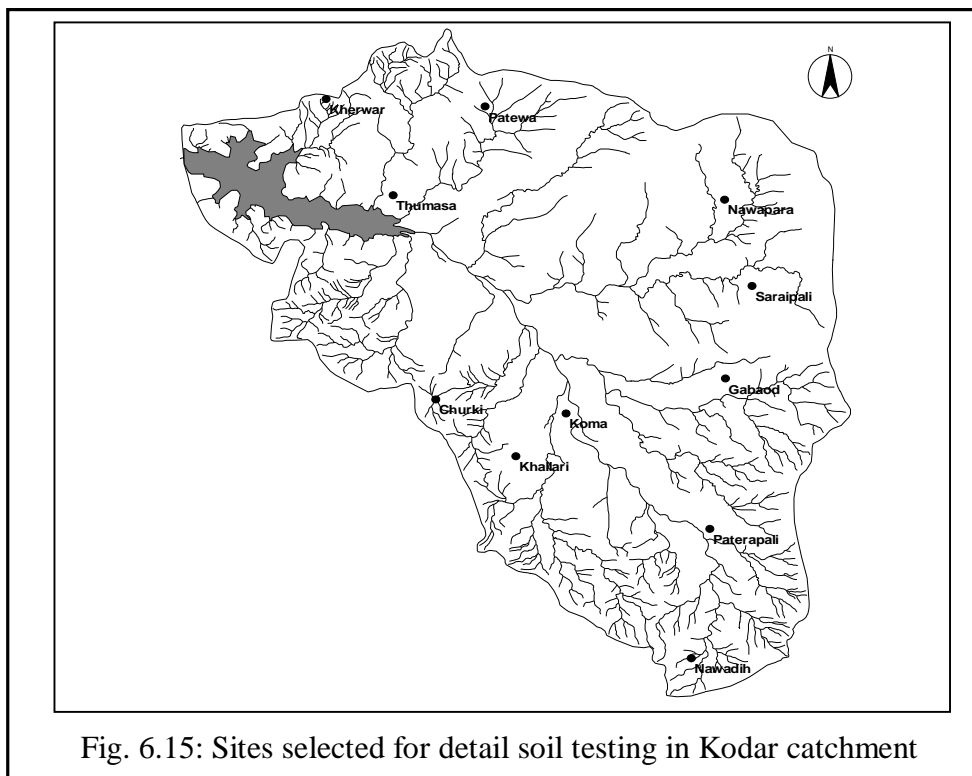


Fig. 6.15: Sites selected for detail soil testing in Kodar catchment

Table 6.8: Name and location of soil testing sites in Kodar catchment

S.N.	Site	Name of village	Latitude	Longitude	Soil No.	Land use
1.	Site-1	Kherwar	21 <sup>0</sup> 13	82 <sup>0</sup> 14	657	Forest
2.	Site-2	Patewa	21 <sup>0</sup> 13	82 <sup>0</sup> 17	670	Agriculture
3.	Site-3	Thumasa	21 <sup>0</sup> 11	82 <sup>0</sup> 15	670	Forest
4.	Site-4	Nawapara	21 <sup>0</sup> 11	82 <sup>0</sup> 21	746	Agriculture
5.	Site-5	Gabaud	21 <sup>0</sup> 07	82 <sup>0</sup> 21	746	Forest
6.	Site-6	Khalari	21 <sup>0</sup> 06	82 <sup>0</sup> 17	746	Agriculture
7.	Site-7	Saraipali	21 <sup>0</sup> 09	82 <sup>0</sup> 22	689	Agriculture
8.	Site-8	Koma	21 <sup>0</sup> 06	82 <sup>0</sup> 18	689	Agriculture
9.	Site-9	Paterapali	21 <sup>0</sup> 04	82 <sup>0</sup> 21	733	Scrub
10.	Site-10	Churki	21 <sup>0</sup> 07	82 <sup>0</sup> 16	747	Scrub
11.	Site-11	Nawadih	21 <sup>0</sup> 02	82 <sup>0</sup> 20	747	Forest

### 6.6.1 Infiltration test

The infiltration rate at any time plays an important role for fractionation of groundwater and surface water which is responsible for soil erosion and movement of sediment particles. The infiltration tests on eleven sites have been conducted using double ring infiltrometer under covering all the major land uses, soils and other hydrological conditions. The test has been carried out till the constant rate of infiltration was obtained and using these data infiltration curves have been plotted for each site. The infiltration curves for few sites have been presented in Fig 6.16. The Kostiakov's model, modified Kostiakov's model, Horton's model and Philip's two-term models have been applied and parameters of these models have been computed to understand the infiltration process in catchment areas. The parameters of all these models have been given in Table 6.9. For determination of the best fitted model, integral square error (*ISE*), root mean square error (*RMSE*) and efficiency ( $\eta$ ) have been computed and results have been presented in Table 6.10.

It has been observed that modified Kostikov's model has been found the best fitted infiltration model for Kherwar, Patewa, Thumsa, Gaboud, Khalari, Koma, Paterapali and Churki site. The Kostikov's model can be fitted well with the observed data of infiltration tests on Gaboud, Nawapara, Saraipali and Nawadih sites. The performance of Horton's model was not found suitable at any place as this model did not found fit in upper portion of infiltration curve, while gave close match in lower portion. The observed and computed rate of infiltration from different models for few sites in the Kodar catchment has been presented in Fig. 6.17. The best fit model and equation for computation of rate of infiltration have been given in Table 6.11. From the analysis, it may be concluded that the modified Kostiakov's model can be used for modeling the infiltration process in the Kodar catchment and similar type of soils in the region.

### 6.6.2 Hydraulic conductivity test

The Guleph permeameter has been used to determine the field saturated hydraulic conductivity in mm/hr, metric flux potential ( $\phi_m$ ) in  $\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$ , sorptivity (*S*) in  $\text{cm}/\text{sec}^{-1/2}$  and constant ( $\alpha$ ) in  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  and results have been presented in Table 6.12. From the analysis, it has been observed that the field saturated hydraulic conductivity in the study area varies between 0.10 cm/hr to 88.95 cm/hr.

### 6.6.3 Particle size analysis

The particle size analysis is carried out to determine the relative proportion of different grain sizes that make a given soil mass. Their relative proportion of sand, silt and clay determine the soil texture. Soil textures are classified by the fractions of each soils (sand, silt, and clay) separately present in a soil. For determination of soil texture at different sites in the catchment of Kodar reservoir, the particle size analysis has been carried out at National Institute of Technology, Raipur. The coarse sieve analysis has been carried out using sieve shaker while pipette analysis has been used for analysis of fine particles. The texture of soil has been determined using percentages of gravel, sand, silt and clay in soil triangle. The soil texture of soils at different soil sites has been presented in Table 6.13. From the analysis, it has been observed that the soil in the study area are mainly silt loamy and sandy loam which are prone to erosion and conservation measures are necessary to reduce displacement of soils.

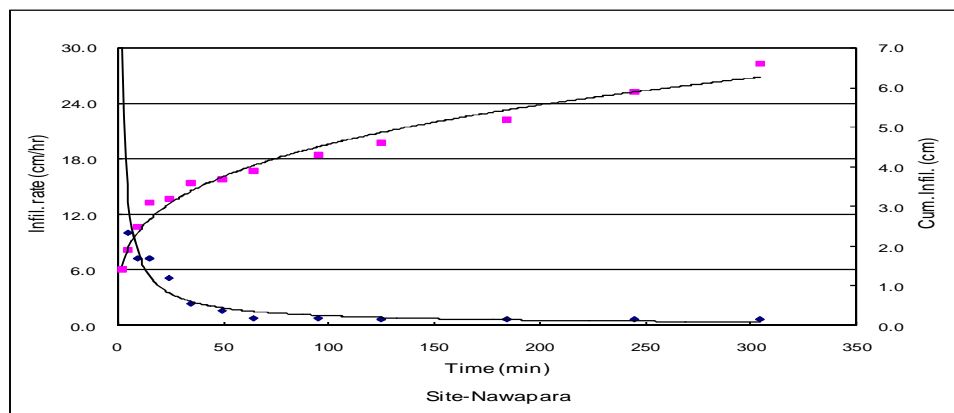
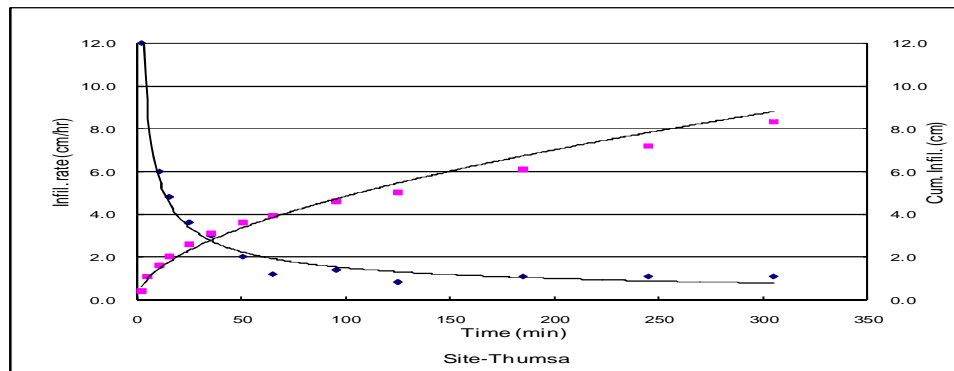
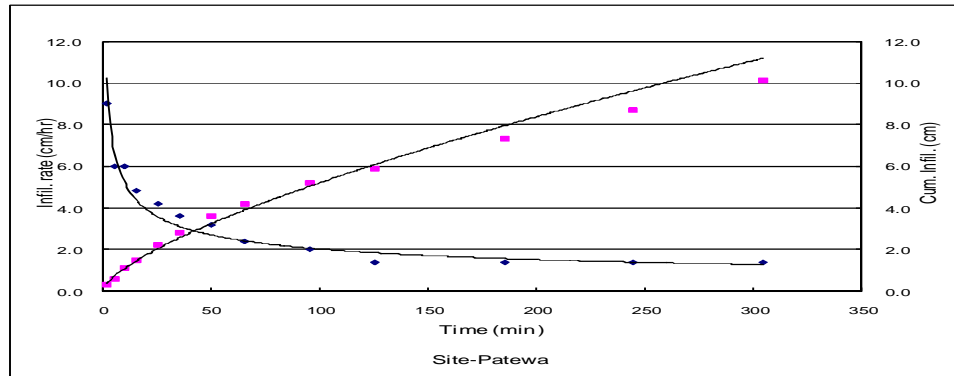
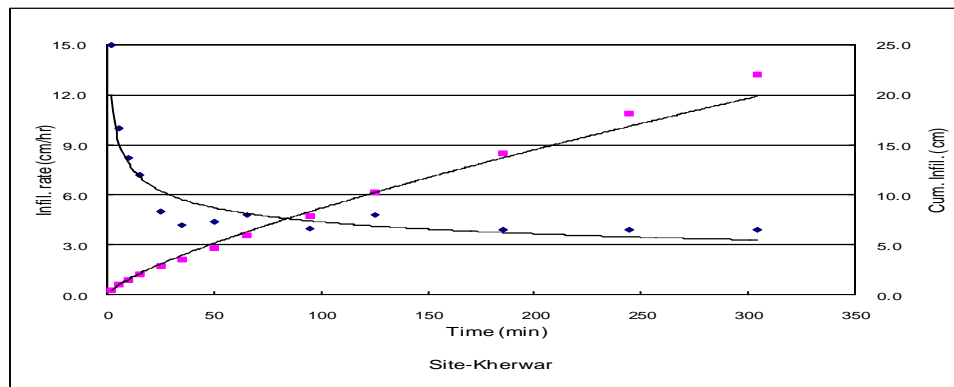


Fig. 6.16: Infiltration curve for few sites in Kodar reservoir catchment

Table 6.9: Parameters of various infiltration models

Site	Kostiakov's model		Modified Kostiakov's Model			Horton's model			Philip's two term model	
	$K_K$	$\alpha$	$B$	$n$	$i_c$	$f_c$	$f_o$	$k$	$S$	$A$
Kherwar	0.261	0.759	0.211	0.081	0.111	3.9	9.368	0.045	0.288	0.056
Patewa	0.417	0.588	0.268	0.634	-0.129	1.4	6.343	0.032	0.174	0.04
Thumsa	0.555	0.465	0.915	0.361	-0.774	0.9	8.817	0.045	0.507	-0.001
Nawapara	1.332	0.267	1.393	0.26	-0.17	0.5	5.665	0.04	0.575	-0.014
Gaboud	0.442	0.61	0.487	0.595	-0.176	2.0	11.679	0.34	0.292	0.04
Khalari	0.387	0.639	0.411	0.595	-0.146	1.6	8.657	0.025	0.333	0.049
Saraipali	0.347	0.373	0.394	0.37	-0.087	0.3	3.918	0.036	0.305	-0.01
Koma	0.994	0.397	1.593	0.297	-1.016	0.5	13.671	0.035	0.771	-0.004
Paterapali	0.521	0.458	0.78	0.386	-0.349	0.7	14.03	0.065	0.45	0.002
Churki	0.254	0.6	0.23	0.619	0.044	1.1	5.484	0.026	0.269	0.013
Nawadhi	0.235	836	0.247	0.826	-0.027	4.0	8.82	0.011	0.166	0.098

Table 6.10: Performance evaluation of various infiltration models

Site	Kostikov's model			Modified Kostikov's model			Philip's two term model			Horton's Model		
	$RMSE$	$ISE$	$\eta$	$RMSE$	$ISE$	$\eta$	$RMSE$	$ISE$	$\eta$	$RMSE$	$ISE$	$\eta$
Kherwar	0.12	0.02	99.42	0.08	0.01	99.76	0.03	0.01	99.60	0.56	0.09	62.86
Patewa	0.30	0.07	96.83	0.08	0.02	99.97	0.36	0.10	72.45	0.30	0.08	74.55
Thumsa	0.19	0.06	85.08	0.03	0.01	99.60	0.25	0.09	73.28	0.43	0.12	82.81
Nawapara	0.02	0.02	97.84	0.05	0.01	97.61	0.15	0.45	73.77	0.89	0.51	9.68
Gaboud	0.04	0.01	99.86	0.04	0.01	99.84	0.23	0.05	95.01	0.43	0.08	86.44
Khalari	0.32	0.07	86.79	0.03	0.01	99.86	0.75	0.17	28.59	0.47	0.10	78.03
Saraipali	0.02	0.01	99.21	0.05	0.31	94.37	0.05	0.03	93.18	0.74	0.34	40.33
Koma	0.29	0.07	67.29	0.10	0.03	96.12	0.46	0.12	18.89	1.42	0.26	57.62
Paterapali	0.06	0.02	98.62	0.03	0.01	99.66	0.17	0.05	86.91	0.50	0.12	87.84
Churki	0.02	0.01	99.87	0.01	0.00	99.95	0.03	0.01	99.73	0.58	0.18	51.97
Nawadhi	0.31	0.04	98.06	0.33	0.04	97.90	0.21	0.27	98.03	0.58	0.09	-

RMSE = Root mean square error, ISE = Integral square error and  $\eta$  = efficiency in percentage



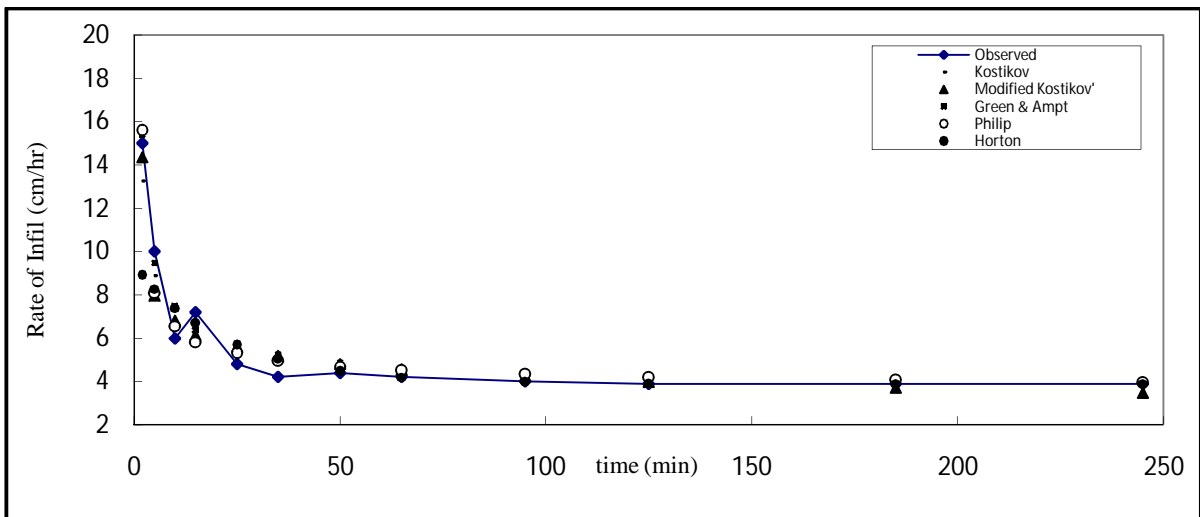
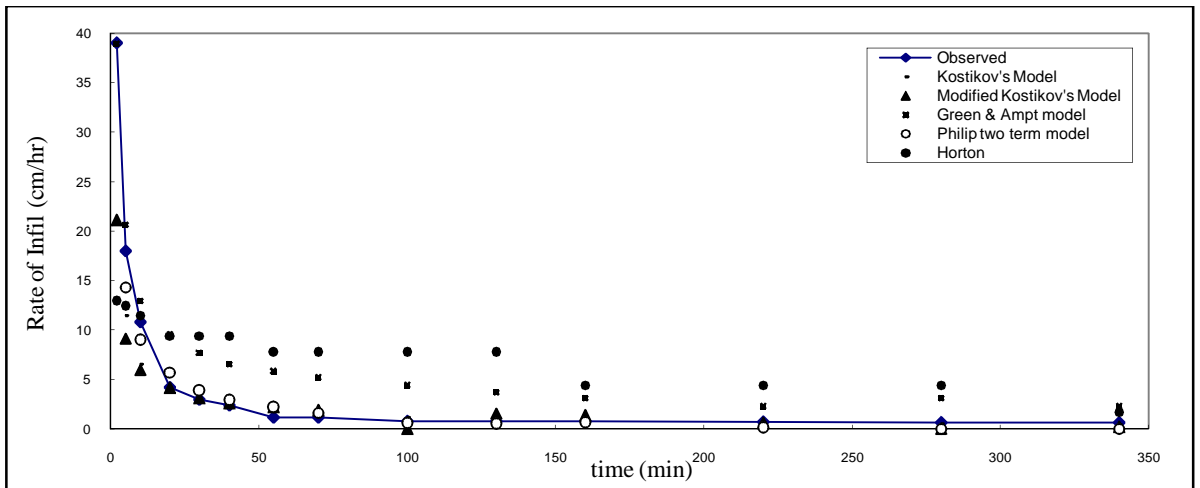
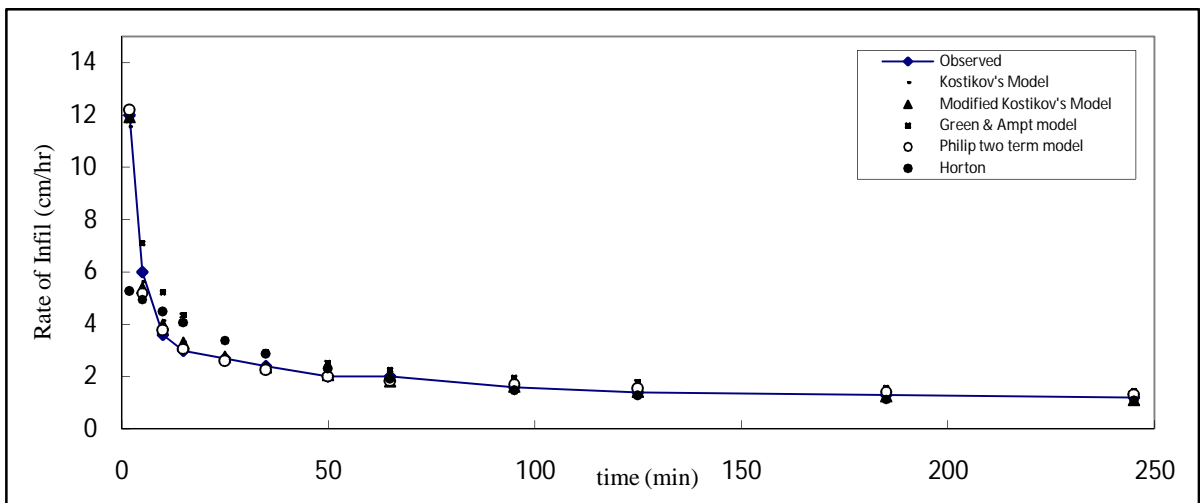


Fig. 6.17: Observed and computed rate of infiltration from various models at few sites in Kodar reservoir catchment

Table 6.11: Best fit infiltration rate models and their equations

S.N.	Name of village	Land use	Soil No.	Best fit infiltration model	Equation ( $F_p$ in cm/hr and $t$ in min)
1.	Kherwar	Forest	657	Modified Kostikov's	$F_p = 0.211t^{0.801} + 0.211$
2.	Patewa	Agriculture	670	Modified Kostikov's	$F_p = 0.268t^{0.634} - 0.129$
3.	Thumsa	Forest	670	Modified Kostikov's	$F_p = 0.915t^{0.361} - 0.774$
4.	Nawapara	Agriculture	746	Kostikov's model	$F_p = 1.332t^{0.267}$
5.	Gabaud	Forest	746	Kostikov's model	$F_p = 0.442t^{0.610}$
6.	Khalari	Agriculture	746	Modified Kostikov's	$F_p = 0.411t^{0.595} - 0.146$
7.	Saraipali	Agriculture	689	Kostikov's model	$F_p = 0.347t^{0.373}$
8.	Koma	Agriculture	689	Modified Kostikov's	$F_p = 1.593t^{0.297} - 1.016$
9.	Paterapali	Scrub	733	Modified Kostikov's	$F_p = 0.78t^{0.386} - 0.349$
10.	Churki	Scrub	747	Modified Kostikov's model	$F_p = 0.23t^{0.044} + 0.619$
11.	Nawadih	Forest	747	Kostikov's model	$F_p = 0.235t^{0.836}$

Table 6.12: Saturated hydraulic conductivity and other parameters in Kodar catchment

S.N	Name of village	Hydraulic conductivity ( $K_s$ ) (cm/hr)	Metric flux potential ( $\phi_m$ ) (cm <sup>2</sup> /sec)	Sorptivity (S) cm/sec <sup>-1/2</sup>	$\alpha$ (cm <sup>-1</sup> )
1.	Kherwar	34.07	0.001	0.010	15.808
2.	Patewa	7.77	0.004	0.024	0.564
3.	Thumsa	15.38	0.001	0.008	3.551
4.	Nawapara	11.94	0.005	0.038	0.615
5.	Gaboud	25.31	0.005	0.030	1.520
6.	Khallari	2.37	0.000	0.006	1.520
7.	Saraipali	7.77	0.004	0.026	0.564
8.	Koma	0.10	0.000	0.001	1.520
9.	Paterapali	10.50	0.003	0.025	1.072
10.	Churki	5.18	0.003	0.016	0.564
11.	Nawadih	88.95	0.047	0.105	0.528

Table 6.13: Soil texture of soils in Kodar reservoir catchment

Site	Village	Percentage of				Type of soil
		Gravel	Sand	Silt	clay	
Site-1	Kherwar	2.0	70.2	27.8	-	Sandy Loam
Site-2	Patewa	5.3	69.4	23.5	1.8	Sandy Loam
Site-3	Thumsa	1.6	74.8	23.0	0.6	Sandy loam
Site-4	Nawapara	1.5	37.1	58.1	3.3	Silt Loam
Site-5	Gabod	14.1	37.2	48.7	-	Silt Loam
Site-6	Khallari	1.1	40.5	55.3	3.1	Silt Loam
Site-7	Saraipali	1.9	36.3	61.8	-	Silt Loam
Site-8	Koma	2.8	35.8	61.4	-	Silt Loam
Site-9	Paterapali	24.1	53.7	20.1	2.1	Sandy Loam
Site-10	Churki	22.4	70.2	7.4	-	Sandy
Site-11	Nawadih	2.9	73.2	23.9	-	Sandy Loam

#### 6.6.4 Dry density and sp. gravity

The core cutter has been used for estimation of bulk density and dry density, while density bottle method has been employed for estimation of sp. gravity. The results obtained from the soil analysis have been used for preparation of soil data base in SWAT model. The results of analysis for tests on dry density, bulk density and sp. gravity have been presented in Table 6.14. The sp. gravity of soils in the region varies from 2.21 to 2.59.

Table 6.14: Dry density and specific gravity of soils in Kodar catchment

Site	Village	Dry density (gm/cm <sup>3</sup> )	Moisture content (%)	Bulk density (gm/cm <sup>3</sup> )	Specific gravity
Site-1	Kherwar	1.51	2.48	1.55	2.21
Site-2	Patewa	1.47	3.97	1.53	2.53
Site-3	Thumsa	1.51	1.08	1.52	2.52
Site-4	Nawapara	1.40	2.68	1.44	2.27
Site-5	Gabod	1.50	3.24	1.55	2.59
Site-6	Khallari	1.29	3.42	1.34	2.56
Site-7	Saraipali	1.37	4.81	1.44	2.50
Site-8	Koma	1.20	7.18	1.29	2.55
Site-9	Paterapali	1.49	2.29	1.51	2.47
Site-10	Churki	1.43	4.82	1.50	2.54
Site-11	Nawadih	1.51	1.55	1.53	2.59

#### 6.7 Watershed Prioritization

The process of watershed prioritization using Saaty's AHP consists of delineation of sub-watersheds, computation of EHPs and their normalized values for sub-watersheds, estimation of Saaty's weights for EHPs and computation overall priority of sub-watersheds and ranking for soil and water conservation measures. For prioritization purposes, the whole Kodar catchment has been divided into sixty seven sub-watersheds with area ranging from 0.05 sq. km. to 13.05 sq. km. The map showing location of sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment has been given in Fig. 6.18. In the present study, spatial distribution of all selected EHPs including soil loss using USLE/RUSLE model ( $SL$ ), sediment production rate ( $SPR$ ), sediment yield ( $SY$ ), sediment transport index or sediment power index ( $STI$  or  $SPI$ ), slope ( $Sl$ ), drainage density ( $D_d$ ), channel frequency ( $C_f$ ), form factor ( $R_f$ ) and circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ) for all 67 sub-watersheds in Kodar reservoir catchment have been computed and converted to its normalized value. Considering the relative importance of each parameter on others, the priority matrix and subsequently the weights for each parameters using Saaty's AHP have been computed. The final priority for each watershed has been determined as a product of multiplication of priority weights and normalized values of all parameters. The priority ranking has been performed to determine environmentally stressed watersheds in the catchment. The results obtained during computation of various EHPs are being described here.

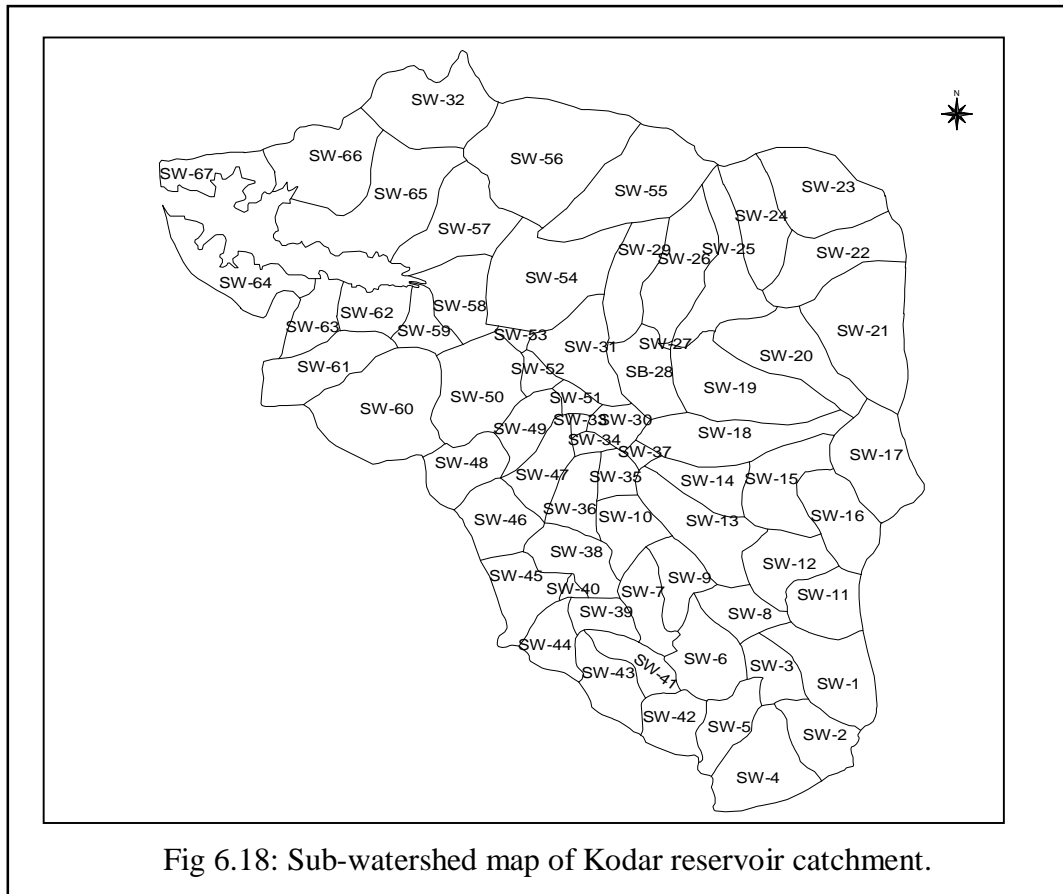


Fig 6.18: Sub-watershed map of Kodar reservoir catchment.

### 6.7.1 Soil loss estimation using USLE and RUSLE models (SL)

In the present study, soil loss from the Kodar catchment has been estimated using USLE and RUSLE model. ILWIS software has been used for generation of various factor maps.

#### 6.7.1.1 USLE model

Various maps representing spatial distribution of different factors  $R$ ,  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $S$ ,  $C$  &  $P$  have been prepared in ILWIS GIS and soil loss distribution have been estimated using USLE model. The theissen map of Kodar catchment has been prepared and it has been observed that Kodar catchment is affected by Kodar, Bagbahara and Bartunga R.G. stations. The weights and  $R$ -factor for different RG stations have been presented in Table 6.15 The value of annual and seasonal  $R$ -factor for kodar reservoir catchment has been obtained as  $429.39 \text{ MJmmha}^{-1}\text{hr}^{-1}$  and  $402.94 \text{ MJmmha}^{-1}\text{hr}^{-1}$  respectively. The  $K$ -factor maps for Kodar catchment has been prepared on the basis of soil type present in the study area (Table 6.16).

Table 6.15: Computation of  $R$ -factor for Kodar catchment

Rain gauge station	Weight	Annual rainfall (mm)	Annual $R$ -factor ( $\text{MJ mm ha}^{-1}\text{hr}^{-1}$ )	Seasonal rainfall (mm)	Seasonal $R$ -factor ( $\text{MJ mm ha}^{-1}\text{hr}^{-1}$ )
Kodar	0.50	960.68	427.73	909.99	403.99
Bagbahara	0.48	951.81	424.51	891.67	396.97
Bartunga	0.02	1063.66	465.11	970.90	427.68
Kodar Catchment		985.82	429.39		402.94

Table 6.16: Soil type and their corresponding *K*-values in Kodar reservoir catchment

S.N.	Soil unit	Code	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	<i>K</i> -factor
1.	Fine-Loamy, Kaolinitic, Isohyperthermic, Typic Haplustalfs	746	147.99	0.38
2.	Fine, Mixed, Hyperthermic, Vertic Ustochrepts	670	44.52	0.28
3.	Fine-Laomy, Mixed, Isohyperthermic, Typic Haplustalfs	733	36.53	0.38
4.	Fine, Mixed, Hyperthermic, Typic Haplusterts	689	31.30	0.28
5.	Fine-Loamy, Kaolinitic, Isohyperthermic, Typic Rhodustalfs	747	30.49	0.38
6.	Fine-Loamy, Mixed, Hyperthermic, Typic Haplustalfs	710	7.25	0.30
7.	Loamy-Skeletal, Kaolinitic, Hyperthermic, Lithic Ustorthents	657	9.62	0.34

For preparation of *L*-factor map, the DEM map has been used as an input and slope map for the study area has been derived. The *m*-map has been prepared using slicing operation of ILWIS. Using slope map and *m*-map, *L*-factor map for Kodar catchment has been generated using eq. 5.10. The *S*-factor map for the catchment has been prepared using slope map derived from DEM. The *C*-factor map has been derived from land use map of Kodar reservoir catchment. For determination of land use in the study area, LISS-IV data of different dates have been used and supervised classification has been performed using maximum likelihood algorithm (Fig 6.14) in ILWIS GIS software. The *C*-factor according to land uses have been assigned in attribute table and *C*-factor map has been generated. Dense forests, agriculture, scrubs, built-up land and water bodies are the main land uses and distribution with corresponding *C*-factors has been given in Table 5.3. It has been observed from the field visits that presently no conservation measures are being implemented in study area, *P*-factor map has been generated using *P*-factor values for different land uses with no conservation measures (Table 6.17). The resultant soil erosion map has been obtained by integrating *R*, *K*, *L*, *S*, *C* and *P* factor maps. The histogram of the resultant map has been used to estimate the rate of soil erosion from the catchment. The *R*, *K*, *L*, *S*, *C*, *P*-factor, annual soil erosion and distribution of soil erosion in different classes from Kodar reservoir catchment has been presented in Fig. 6.19.

Table 6.17: Land uses and their corresponding *C* and *P*-values in Kodar dam catchment

S.N.	Land use	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Percentage Area	<i>C</i> -Factor	<i>P</i> -Factor
1.	Agriculture	243.86	79.39	0.28	1.00
2.	Dense forest	48.38	15.75	0.011	0.80
3.	Scrub	1.22	0.40	0.21	1.00
4.	Water bodies	5.81	1.89	0.009	0.00
5.	Settlement	7.88	2.57	0.024	1.00
	Total	307.17	100		

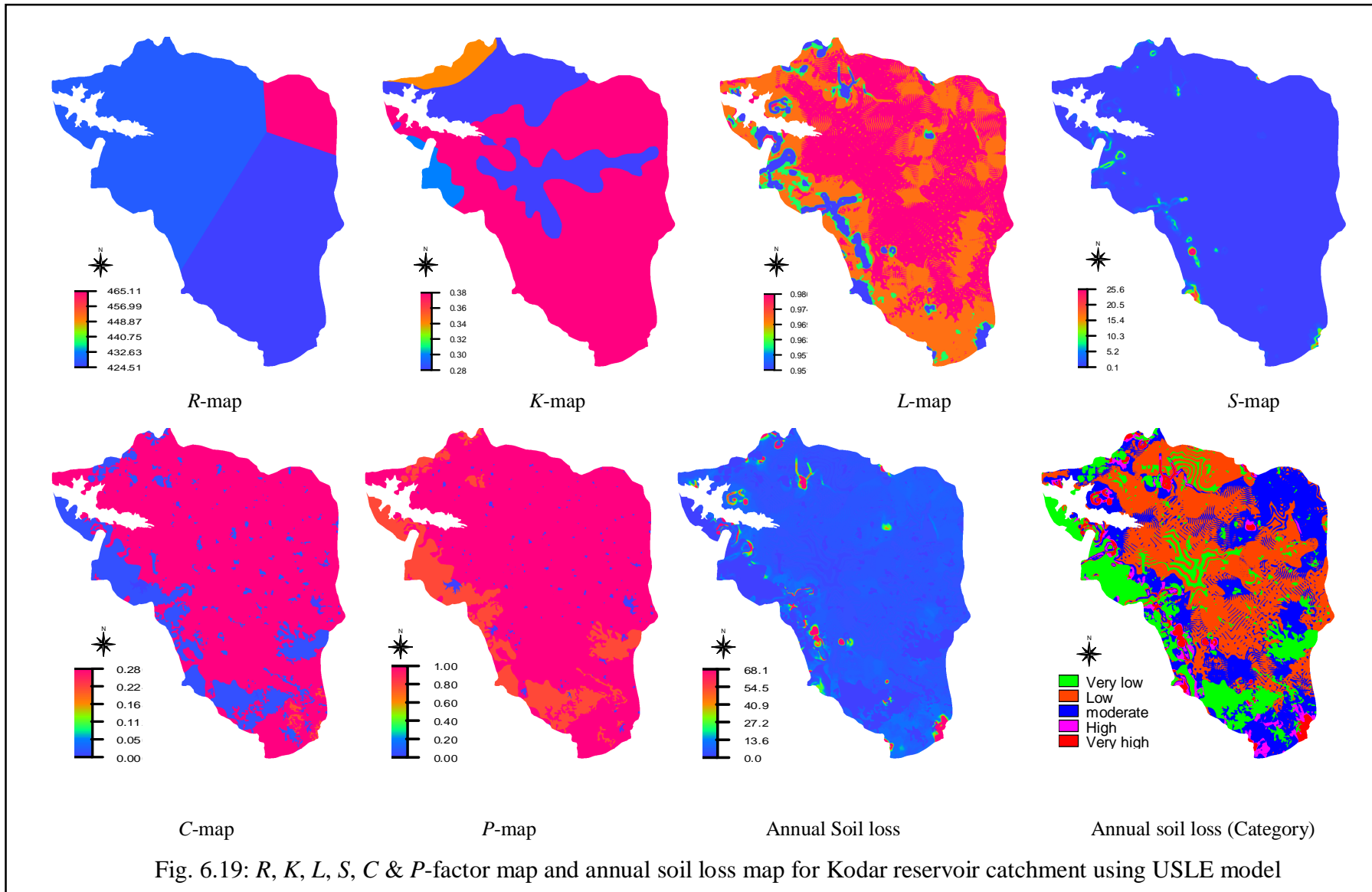


Fig. 6.19: R, K, L, S, C & P-factor map and annual soil loss map for Kodar reservoir catchment using USLE model

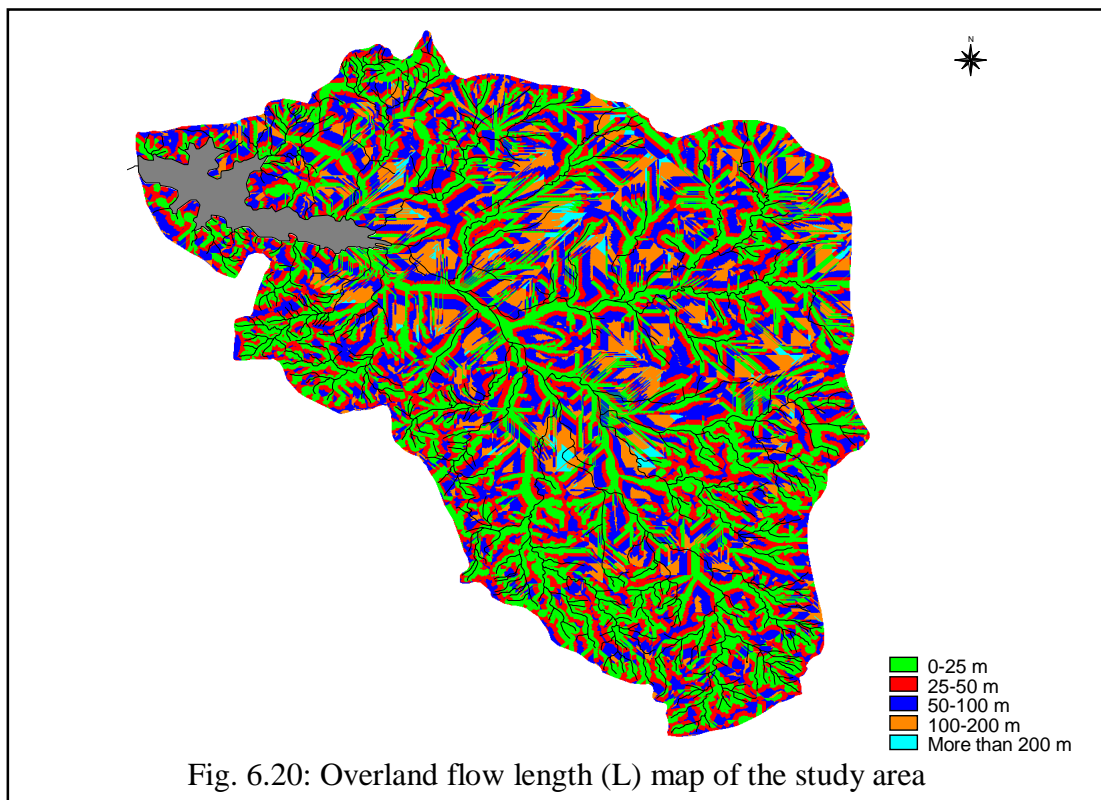
From the analysis, it has been observed that the average annual and seasonal soil loss from Kodar reservoir catchment is 7.06 t/ha/yr and 6.62 t/ha/yr respectively. A classification has been performed on the basis of rate of erosion. The study area has been divided in five classes on the basis of rate of erosion as 0.0 to 1.0 t/ha/yr (V. low), 1.0 to 3.0 t/ha/yr (Low), 3.0 to 5.0 t/ha/yr (Moderate), 5.0 to 8.0 t/ha/yr (High) and more than 8.0 t/ha/yr (V. high).

### 6.7.1.2 *RUSLE model*

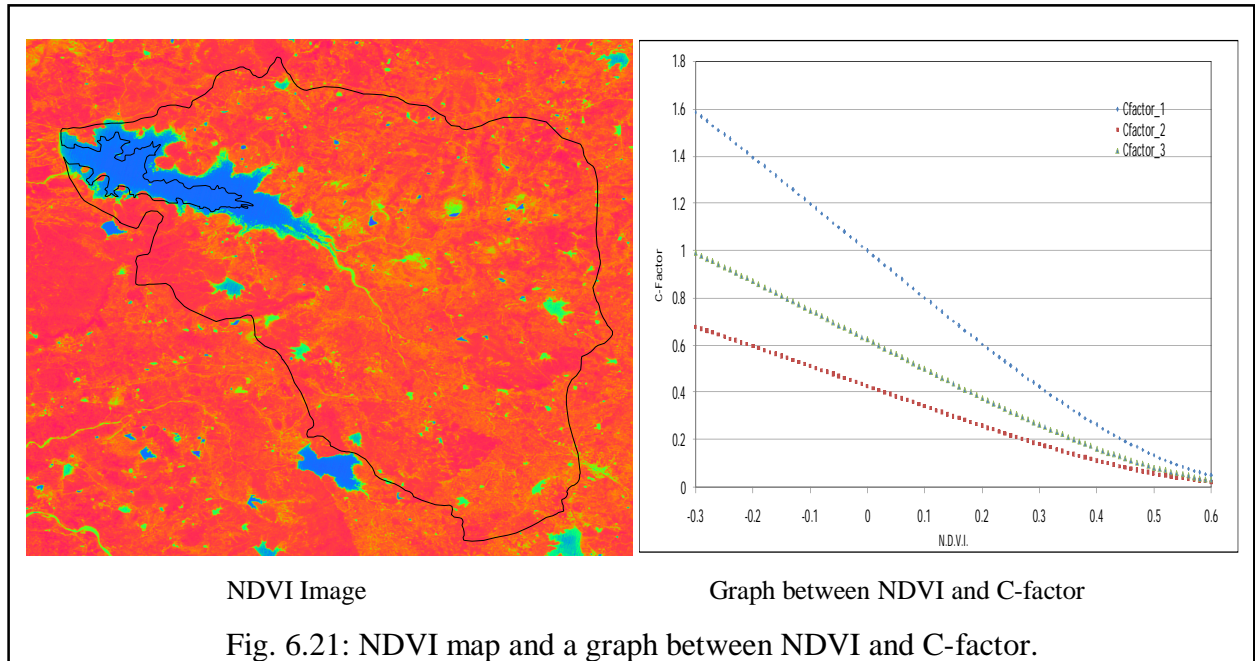
The *RUSLE* model which is a revised form of *USLE* model has been applied for estimation of soil loss from Kodar catchment. In *RUSLE* model, the same *R*-factor map has been used as it was used in *USLE* model. For determination of *K*-factor map, the results obtained from analysis of soil textural analysis, infiltration test, saturated hydraulic conductivity test and nutrient analysis has been used. The average values of various factors including *M*, *a*, *b*, *c* and resulting *K*-values have been presented in Table 6.18. The overland flow length map for *RUSLE* model has been generated using DEM hydro processing facility of *ILWIS 3.6*. The overland flow length map of the study area has been given in Fig. 6.20. The slope length map and slope map have been used to determine *SL*-factor.

Table 6.18: Computation of *K*-factor for soils in the study area

Nomenclature	% Fine sand	% Silt	% Clay	<i>M</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>K</i> Factor
657 & 670	11.03	11.32	1.80	2668.59	1.62	3	1	0.15
689	8.60	23.87	12.22	2850.38	2.03	3	1	0.20
710	6.30	5.41	0.00	1171.00	1.62	3	3	0.09
733	4.47	14.12	2.14	1819.22	1.21	3	3	0.15
746	3.20	26.87	3.22	2910.32	1.97	3	2	0.20
747	10.03	19.83	0.00	3086.00	0.86	3	2	0.24



For determination of *C*-factor map of the study area, the NDVI image generated from LISS III data for the study area has been used. The *C*-factor-map using equation 5.13 has been prepared and a graph between NDVI and *C*-factor values has been plotted. From the analysis of graph, it has been observed that the some of the *C*-factor values were above the limiting value of *C*-factor. Therefore, a correction factor of 0.6246 has been applied to keep all the values between 0 and 1. The NDVI image and graph between NDVI and *C*-factor have been presented in Fig 6.21.



For determination of *P*-factor map, the slope of the study area in agricultural land has been divided into different classes and accordingly *P*-factor values as given in the Table 5.2 have been assigned for each slope class. For other land uses, the standard values considering no conservation measures have been given in attribute table for generation of *P*-factor map. After integration of *R*, *K*, *SL*, *C* and *P* factor maps, an erosion map for Kodar reservoir catchment has been obtained. The *R*, *K*, *SL*, *C*, *P* and annual soil loss map of for Kodar reservoir catchment have been given in Fig. 6.22 and distribution in different classes in Table 6.19. The results obtained from the analysis indicated that the average annual and seasonal rate of soil loss from the Kodar reservoir catchment is 7.78 t/ha/year and 7.32 t/ha/year respectively using RUSLE model. Slope is one of the important factor for assessment of soil loss, distribution of soil loss in different slope classes have been estimated and a matrix of soil loss classes and slope classes in Kodar catchment has been determined and presented in Table 6.20. From the analysis of matrix, it has been observed that the higher slope areas contribute more soil erosion. Similarly, the forested land and barren areas contributes more soil erosion due to high slope and absence of effective conservation practices. It is therefore, necessary to apply mechanical and biological measures of soil conservation in forested and scrub land uses while agronomic measure may further reduces the soil loss from agricultural area. The soil loss map for each sub-watershed has been determined using ‘*iff*’ statement and histogram operation of ILWIS. The annual soil loss from sub-watersheds in Kodar catc`hment varies between 0.51 t/ha/yr in sub-watershed SW-27 and 73.21t/ha/yr in sub-watershed SW-44 using RUSLE model. In the present study, the results obtained from RUSLE model have been used in prioritization analysis.



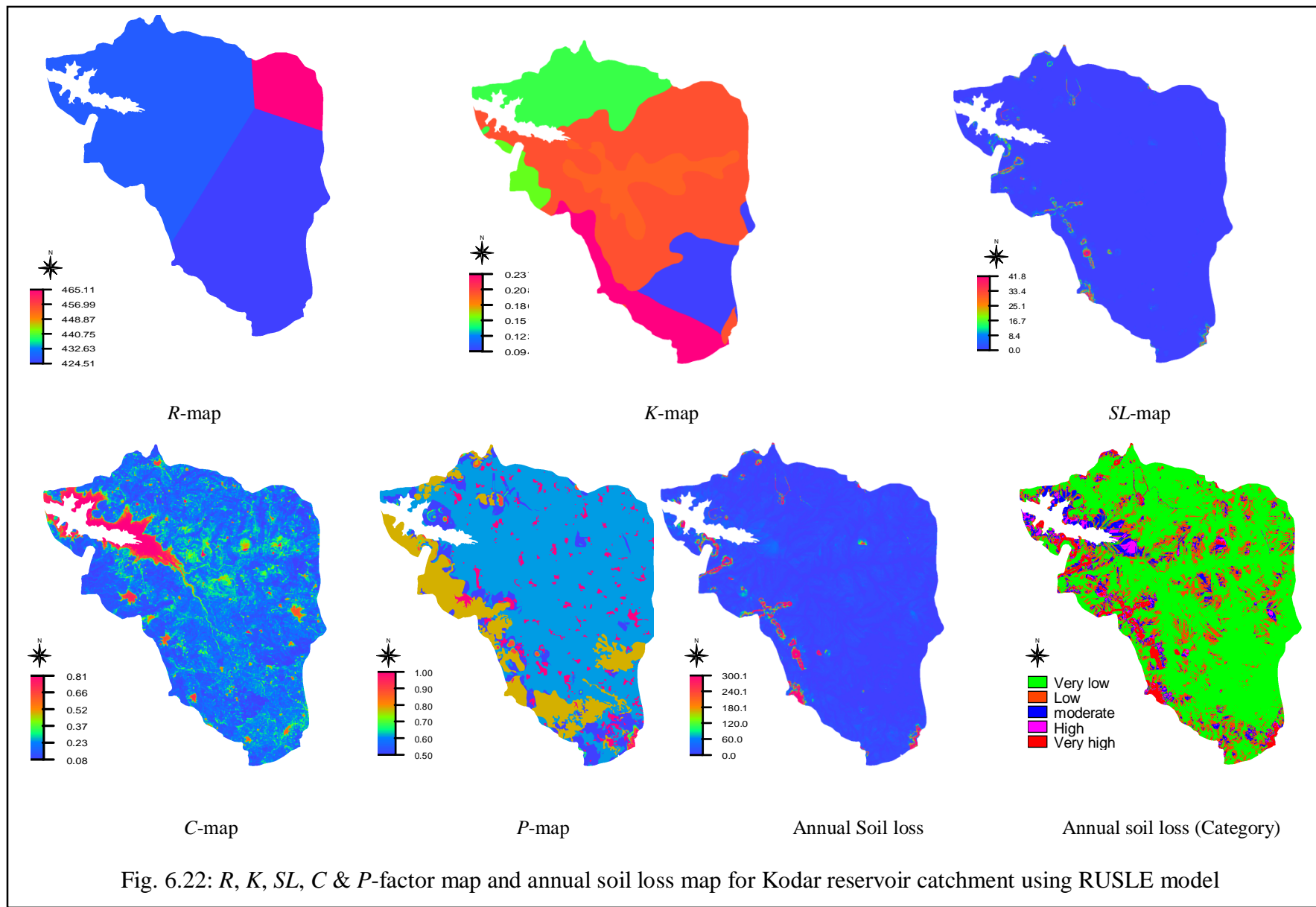


Fig. 6.22: *R*, *K*, *SL*, *C* & *P*-factor map and annual soil loss map for Kodar reservoir catchment using RUSLE model

Table 6.19: Soil loss under various classes in Kodar reservoir catchment

Soil loss class	Area (sq. km)	Percentage
Very Low (0 to 1 t/ha/yr)	97.05	31.59
Low (1 to 3 t/ha/yr)	137.94	44.91
Moderate (3 to 5 t/ha/yr)	35.49	11.55
High (5 to 8 t/ha/yr)	15.87	5.17
Very high (More than 8 t/ha/yr)	20.82	6.78
Total Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	307.17	100

Table 6.20: A matrix of slope class and soil loss for Kodar reservoir catchment

Soil Loss→ Slope ↓	Very Low (0 to 1 t/ha/yr)	Low (1 to 3 t/ha/yr)	Moderate (3 to 5 t/ha/yr)	High (5 to 8 t/ha/yr)	V. High (More than 8 t/ha/yr)	Total Area (Sq. km.)
Nearly level slope (0 to 1 %)	82.12	99.12	20.02	7.02	3.61	211.89
Very gentle slope (1 to 3 %)	14.38	36.25	12.62	5.95	3.63	72.82
Gentle slope (3 to 5%)	0.33	2.14	2.05	1.61	1.26	7.38
Moderate slope (5 to 10%)	0.10	0.43	0.77	1.18	2.81	5.30
Strong slope (10 to 15%)	0.03	0.00	0.03	0.10	2.04	2.21
Steep slope (15 to 35%)	0.08	0.00	0.00	0.01	4.69	4.78
Very steep slope (More than 35%)	0.01	0.00	0.00	0.00	2.78	2.79
Total area (Sq. km.)	97.05	137.94	35.49	15.87	20.82	307.17

### 6.7.2 Estimation of sediment production rate (SPR)

For estimation of sediment production rate, a geomorphological model proposed by Josh & Das, 1983 has been used. Various geomorphological parameters including watershed area, perimeter, basin length, form factor, circulatory ratio and compactness coefficient for different sub-watersheds have been computed in GIS environment and resultant SPR for all the sub-watersheds have been estimated and presented in Table 6.21. The sediment production rate (SPR) from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment ranges from 0.13 (ha-m/100 sq km/year) from SW-64 to 5.05 (ha-m/100 sq km/year) from SW-38. From SPR point of view, sub-watershed SW-38 needs immediate attention, while sub-watershed SW-64 can be considered at last for soil and water conservation.

Table 6.21: Computation of sediment production rate from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment.

Basin	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Perimeter (m)	basin length (m)	Form Factor (Rf)	Cir. Ratio (Rc)	Comp. Coeff. (Cc)	SPR (ha-m/100 km <sup>2</sup> /year)	Basin	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Perimeter (m)	basin length (m)	Form Factor (Rf)	Cir. Ratio (Rc)	Comp. Coeff. (Cc)	SPR (ha-m/100 km <sup>2</sup> /year)
SW-1	6.32	11405.26	4370.74	0.33	0.61	1.28	2.16	SW-35	1.57	5129.16	1520.23	0.68	0.75	1.16	1.71
SW-2	3.71	8257.56	3035.60	0.40	0.68	1.21	1.90	SW-36	3.01	7871.86	2675.67	0.42	0.61	1.28	2.26
SW-3	2.72	7385.30	2383.69	0.48	0.63	1.26	2.27	SW-37	0.51	3031.40	895.88	0.64	0.70	1.19	2.00
SW-4	6.39	10674.17	3809.95	0.44	0.71	1.19	1.81	SW-38	4.01	8765.66	1328.45	2.27	0.66	1.23	5.05
SW-5	3.29	8669.60	3616.59	0.25	0.55	1.35	2.12	SW-39	2.02	6247.82	1435.69	0.98	0.65	1.24	2.75
SW-6	4.87	9621.64	3565.10	0.38	0.66	1.23	2.01	SW-40	0.35	2825.82	777.13	0.57	0.55	1.35	2.46
SW-7	3.18	8876.62	3638.25	0.24	0.51	1.40	1.97	SW-41	2.52	7998.96	3078.45	0.27	0.50	1.42	1.92
SW-8	2.94	7401.03	2350.64	0.53	0.68	1.22	2.08	SW-42	3.22	7505.19	2060.35	0.76	0.72	1.18	2.00
SW-9	3.10	8291.59	2927.38	0.36	0.57	1.33	2.25	SW-43	3.69	8966.53	3826.20	0.25	0.58	1.32	2.14
SW-10	3.39	8002.75	2830.37	0.42	0.66	1.23	2.03	SW-44	2.81	7509.08	2479.18	0.46	0.63	1.26	2.25
SW-11	4.06	7723.60	2127.72	0.90	0.86	1.08	1.09	SW-45	4.16	9671.06	2297.22	0.79	0.56	1.34	2.76
SW-12	4.32	8947.12	2609.68	0.63	0.68	1.21	2.17	SW-46	4.15	8045.37	2616.16	0.61	0.81	1.11	1.25
SW-13	6.06	12202.83	4928.51	0.25	0.51	1.40	1.99	SW-47	3.32	8801.75	3223.49	0.32	0.54	1.36	2.17
SW-14	3.23	8505.43	2935.17	0.37	0.56	1.34	2.26	SW-48	3.86	8005.65	2553.41	0.59	0.76	1.15	1.58
SW-15	5.39	11172.80	2645.73	0.77	0.54	1.36	2.70	SW-49	2.85	7782.93	2570.62	0.43	0.59	1.30	2.32
SW-16	4.92	9216.04	3734.46	0.35	0.73	1.17	1.59	SW-50	7.18	10719.38	4008.50	0.45	0.79	1.13	1.28
SW-17	6.56	10386.54	2823.87	0.82	0.77	1.14	1.70	SW-51	0.94	4170.17	1425.87	0.46	0.68	1.22	2.00
SW-18	6.55	13908.31	6303.72	0.16	0.43	1.53	1.28	SW-52	1.02	4433.88	1404.73	0.52	0.66	1.24	2.18
SW-19	8.28	13151.33	5314.50	0.29	0.60	1.29	2.15	SW-53	0.51	3148.50	1034.03	0.48	0.65	1.24	2.18
SW-20	6.73	12419.93	4803.23	0.29	0.55	1.35	2.16	SW-54	9.94	14160.45	3468.79	0.83	0.62	1.27	2.70
SW-21	10.17	13450.23	4066.24	0.61	0.71	1.19	1.96	SW-55	9.56	13848.79	5328.62	0.34	0.63	1.26	2.12
SW-22	6.22	12100.23	4463.23	0.31	0.53	1.37	2.14	SW-56	13.05	14498.24	3929.30	0.85	0.78	1.13	1.59
SW-23	7.11	10710.75	3002.49	0.79	0.78	1.13	1.56	SW-57	6.66	12307.68	3224.27	0.64	0.55	1.34	2.56
SW-24	5.02	10651.56	2818.79	0.63	0.56	1.34	2.56	SW-58	4.18	10293.73	2476.66	0.68	0.50	1.42	2.35
SW-25	6.10	15329.06	6020.45	0.17	0.33	1.75	0.40	SW-59	2.29	7695.77	1999.33	0.57	0.49	1.43	2.16
SW-26	6.18	12163.81	5420.02	0.21	0.53	1.38	2.01	SW-60	10.49	12956.06	3957.45	0.67	0.79	1.13	1.43
SW-27	0.05	1101.47	369.58	0.38	0.53	1.37	2.21	SW-61	5.27	10476.19	4045.84	0.32	0.60	1.29	2.17
SW-28	4.24	8851.21	3239.05	0.40	0.68	1.21	1.93	SW-62	2.98	7588.61	1603.80	1.16	0.65	1.24	3.00
SW-29	4.44	10182.61	4190.04	0.25	0.54	1.36	2.09	SW-63	2.85	7998.80	3062.21	0.30	0.56	1.34	2.19
SW-30	1.79	5313.87	1875.31	0.51	0.80	1.12	1.24	SW-64	5.41	16500.93	1797.16	1.68	0.25	2.00	0.13
SW-31	5.37	10623.70	2335.81	0.98	0.60	1.29	3.01	SW-65	10.67	18200.97	3586.95	0.83	0.40	1.57	1.49
SW-32	7.82	11976.44	2189.09	1.63	0.69	1.21	3.43	SW-66	7.35	12502.05	3188.75	0.72	0.59	1.30	2.67
SW-33	0.34	2501.31	763.90	0.58	0.68	1.21	2.08	SW-67	3.78	12937.66	856.49	5.15	0.28	1.88	1.74
SW-34	0.64	3417.95	728.57	1.21	0.69	1.20	2.74								

### 6.7.3 Estimation of sediment yield (SY)

For estimation of sediment yield from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment, a simple regression model quoted in literature (Kumar, 1985, Rao & Mahabaleswara, 1990) has been used. This model uses rainfall, slope, land use and some geomorphological parameters for computation of sediment yield. The annual rainfall for each sub-watershed has been estimated using the thiesen weights of rain gauge stations. From the analysis of sediment yield, it has been observed that minimum sediment yield from sub-watershed SW-27 was  $0.01 \text{ Mm}^3/\text{km}^2/\text{yr}$ , while sub-watershed SW-32 produces maximum sediment yield which as  $0.244 \text{ Mm}^3/\text{km}^2/\text{yr}$  which was maximum among all the sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment (Table 6.22)

### 6.7.4 Estimation of sediment transport index (STI) and sediment power index (SPI)

The sediment transport index and sediment power index for each pixel of Kodar catchment has been computed using sub-routines available in ILWIS 3.7 software. The input maps used for this analysis were digital elevation model and flow accumulation map from which both indices have been derived. After determining the indices, *iff* statement has been used to extract indices maps for each sub-watershed and histogram operation were used to estimate the average sediment transport index and sediment power index. The spatial distribution of sediment power index and sediment transport index in Kodar catchment has been presented in Fig. 6.23. From the analysis, it has been observed that average sediment transport index in the sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment varies from 0.01 in sub-watershed SW-13 to 22.82 in sub-watershed SW-44. The variation of *STI* and *SPI* among the sub-watersheds has been presented in Fig. 6.24. It has been observed that the variation in sediment power index (*SPI*) is not significant and hence sediment transport index (*STI*) has been used in priority analysis.

### 6.7.5 Estimation of average slope (SI)

The slope of each pixel in Kodar catchment has been computed using digital elevation model determined from contour map and point elevations. From the slope map of the study area, the slope map of each sub-watershed has been extracted using *iff* statement and histogram operation has been applied to obtain area under different slope which ultimately led to estimation of average slope for the sub-watershed. The slope map of the study area has been given in Fig. 6.25. The average slope in the sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment ranges from 0.00 % in SW-27 to 11.63 % in SW-44.

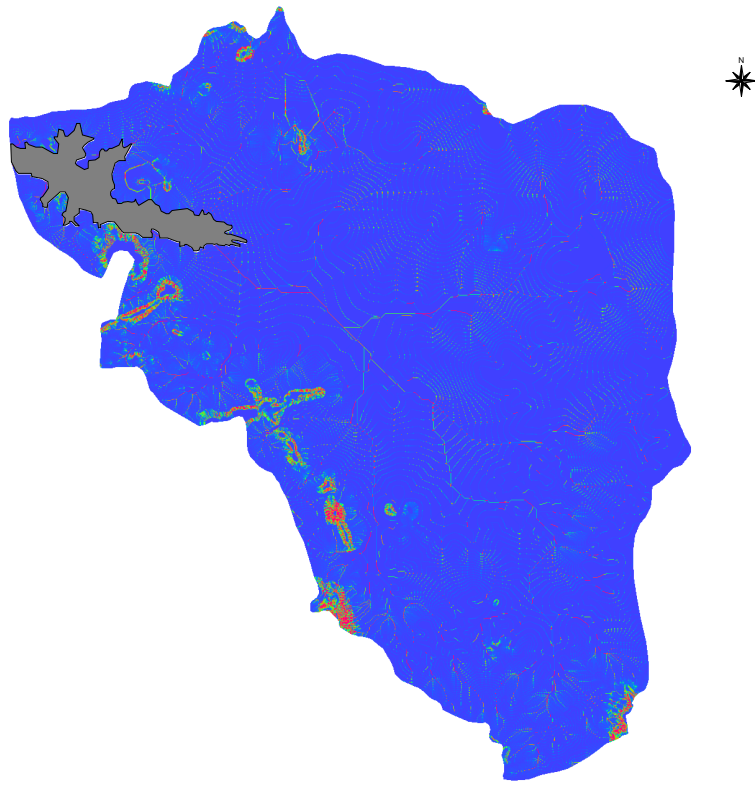
### 6.7.6 Estimation of geomorphological parameters

The geomorphology plays an important role in erosion process and geomorphological parameters are the indicator of the development stage of landforms in the watershed. In the prioritization analysis, drainage density ( $D_d$ ), Channel Frequency ( $C_f$ ), Circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ) and Form factor ( $R_f$ ) have been used. The ILWIS software has been used to delineate drainage and catchment boundary of each sub-watershed and histogram operation has been used to estimate the length and areal aspects. The computation of drainage density and channel frequency for sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment has been presented in Table 6.23. Circulatory ratio and Form factor for sub-watersheds have already been given in Table 6.21.

Table 6.22: Computation of sediment yield from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment

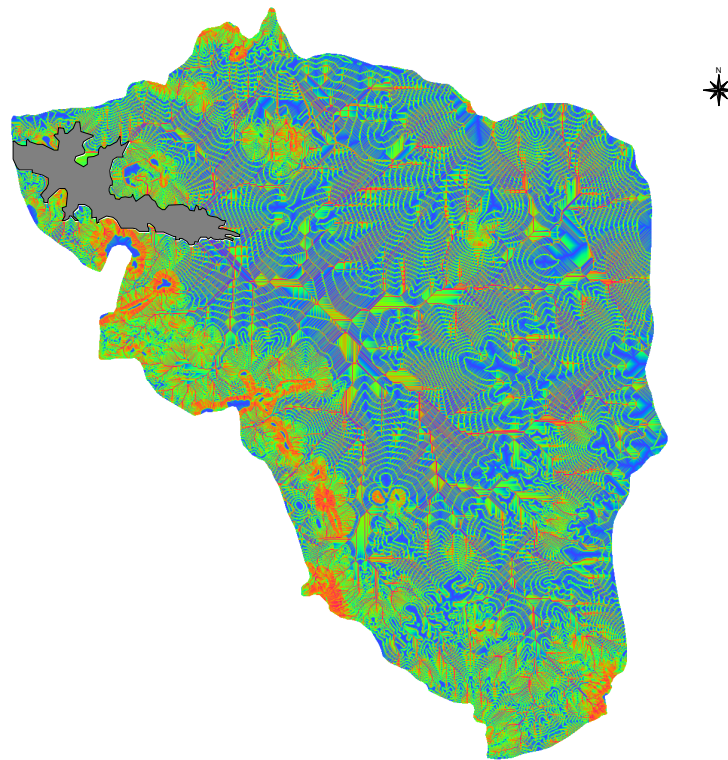
Sub-Watershed No.	Annual rain $P$ (cm)	Area $A$ (km <sup>2</sup> )	Drainage density $(Dd)$ (km/km <sup>2</sup> )	Average slope $SI$ (friction)	Protected forest $F1$ (sq. km)	Open forest $F2$ (sq. km)	Cultivated land $F3$ (sq. km)	Grass & Pasture $F4$ (sq. km)	Waste land $F5$ (sq. km)	Vegetation index $F$	Sediment yield (SY) Mm <sup>3</sup> /sq. km/yr
SW-1	95.18	6.32	2.66	0.02	0.82	0.23	4.99	0.00	0.00	0.53	0.183
SW-2	95.18	3.71	3.24	0.07	0.12	0.72	2.71	0.00	0.00	0.51	0.176
SW-3	95.18	2.72	1.90	0.01	0.79	0.24	1.69	0.00	0.00	0.45	0.072
SW-4	95.18	6.39	2.43	0.02	0.47	0.16	5.21	0.00	0.00	0.56	0.194
SW-5	95.18	3.29	2.66	0.02	0.95	0.00	2.29	0.00	0.00	0.49	0.117
SW-6	95.18	4.87	2.67	0.02	2.17	0.00	2.62	0.00	0.00	0.42	0.092
SW-7	95.18	3.18	1.69	0.01	0.01	0.00	3.01	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.148
SW-8	95.18	2.94	0.87	0.01	0.17	0.00	2.66	0.00	0.00	0.58	0.100
SW-9	95.18	3.10	1.21	0.01	0.00	0.00	2.67	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.129
SW-10	95.18	3.39	1.03	0.01	0.00	0.00	3.23	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.126
SW-11	95.18	4.06	1.88	0.01	0.57	0.00	3.27	0.00	0.00	0.54	0.128
SW-12	95.18	4.32	2.35	0.01	2.87	0.00	1.37	0.00	0.00	0.34	0.045
SW-13	95.18	6.06	1.55	0.01	0.27	0.00	5.63	0.00	0.00	0.58	0.153
SW-14	95.18	3.23	1.36	0.01	0.00	0.00	3.10	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.130
SW-15	95.18	5.39	1.75	0.01	0.64	0.00	4.52	0.00	0.00	0.55	0.140
SW-16	95.18	4.92	2.38	0.01	1.63	0.00	3.13	0.00	0.00	0.47	0.103
SW-17	95.18	6.56	1.86	0.00	0.00	0.00	5.76	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.171
SW-18	95.18	6.55	1.31	0.01	0.00	0.00	6.18	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.162
SW-19	95.18	8.28	1.22	0.01	0.00	0.00	7.85	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.170
SW-20	95.18	6.73	1.04	0.01	0.00	0.00	6.39	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.148
SW-21	99.81	10.17	0.76	0.01	0.00	0.00	9.71	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.160
SW-22	105.75	6.22	1.43	0.01	0.00	0.00	6.06	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.188
SW-23	106.37	7.11	1.08	0.01	0.00	0.00	6.81	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.183
SW-24	106.36	5.02	0.89	0.01	0.00	0.00	4.79	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.155
SW-25	99.35	6.10	0.85	0.01	0.00	0.00	5.74	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.149
SW-26	96.07	6.18	0.80	0.01	0.00	0.00	5.93	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.140
SW-27	96.07	0.05	7.18	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.05	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.010
SW-28	95.71	4.24	0.86	0.01	0.00	0.00	4.08	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.122
SW-29	96.07	4.44	0.83	0.01	0.00	0.00	4.17	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.121
SW-30	95.59	1.79	1.16	0.01	0.00	0.00	1.77	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.104
SW-31	96.07	5.37	0.95	0.00	0.00	0.00	5.13	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.123
SW-32	96.07	7.82	3.04	0.03	0.86	0.00	6.68	0.00	0.00	0.56	0.244
SW-33	96.07	0.34	2.36	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.34	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.071

Sub-Watershed No.	Annual rain $P$ (cm)	Area $A$ (km <sup>2</sup> )	Drainage density ( $Dd$ ) (km/km <sup>2</sup> )	Average slope $Sl$ (friction)	Protected forest $F1$ (sq. km)	Open forest $F2$ (sq. km)	Cultivated land $F3$ (sq. km)	Grass & Pasture $F4$ (sq. km)	Waste land $F5$ (sq. km)	Vegetation index $F$	Sediment yield ( $SY$ ) Mm <sup>3</sup> /sq. km/yr
SW-34	95.95	0.64	1.28	0.01	0.00	0.00	0.64	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.081
SW-35	95.18	1.57	1.06	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.53	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.095
SW-36	95.47	3.01	1.21	0.01	0.00	0.00	2.86	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.124
SW-37	95.18	0.51	1.82	0.01	0.00	0.00	0.51	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.086
SW-38	95.21	4.01	0.71	0.05	0.27	0.00	2.95	0.00	0.00	0.57	0.125
SW-39	95.18	2.02	1.89	0.01	0.07	0.00	1.95	0.00	0.00	0.59	0.128
SW-40	95.18	0.35	2.54	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.32	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.085
SW-41	95.18	2.52	2.91	0.01	2.17	0.00	0.35	0.00	0.00	0.26	0.023
SW-42	95.18	3.22	3.35	0.01	1.98	0.00	1.24	0.00	0.00	0.36	0.058
SW-43	95.18	3.69	2.40	0.01	2.76	0.00	0.84	0.00	0.00	0.30	0.034
SW-44	95.18	2.81	3.41	0.12	1.44	0.00	1.20	0.00	0.00	0.39	0.090
SW-45	95.36	4.16	2.82	0.08	2.19	0.00	1.91	0.00	0.00	0.39	0.092
SW-46	96.07	4.15	2.71	0.07	1.67	0.00	2.13	0.00	0.00	0.43	0.113
SW-47	96.07	3.32	1.03	0.01	0.14	0.00	3.10	0.00	0.00	0.58	0.117
SW-48	96.07	3.86	2.93	0.06	2.59	0.00	1.10	0.00	0.00	0.33	0.056
SW-49	96.07	2.85	2.38	0.03	0.26	0.00	2.24	0.00	0.00	0.56	0.168
SW-50	96.07	7.18	0.71	0.02	0.52	0.00	6.47	0.00	0.00	0.57	0.139
SW-51	96.07	0.94	1.18	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.93	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.070
SW-52	96.07	1.02	1.48	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.95	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.061
SW-53	96.07	0.51	3.22	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.51	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.099
SW-54	96.07	9.94	1.04	0.00	0.00	0.00	9.65	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.165
SW-55	96.09	9.56	1.35	0.01	0.00	0.00	9.21	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.198
SW-56	96.07	13.05	1.52	0.01	0.00	0.00	12.25	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.234
SW-57	96.07	6.66	1.41	0.02	0.47	0.00	5.89	0.00	0.00	0.57	0.174
SW-58	96.07	4.18	1.18	0.00	0.00	0.00	4.14	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.132
SW-59	96.07	2.29	1.06	0.00	0.00	0.00	2.20	0.00	0.00	0.60	0.107
SW-60	96.07	10.49	2.45	0.03	6.41	0.00	3.04	0.00	0.00	0.34	0.069
SW-61	96.07	5.27	3.98	0.06	3.92	0.00	1.35	0.00	0.00	0.31	0.062
SW-62	96.07	2.98	1.36	0.02	0.07	0.00	2.87	0.00	0.00	0.59	0.149
SW-63	96.07	2.85	2.45	0.10	1.82	0.00	1.02	0.00	0.00	0.35	0.061
SW-64	96.07	5.41	1.58	0.06	4.61	0.00	0.80	0.00	0.00	0.27	0.029
SW-65	96.07	10.67	1.03	0.02	0.33	0.00	9.91	0.00	0.00	0.59	0.189
SW-66	96.07	7.35	2.67	0.02	2.11	0.00	5.00	0.00	0.00	0.48	0.151
SW-67	96.07	3.78	1.33	0.02	0.24	0.00	3.33	0.00	0.00	0.57	0.143



Sediment Transport Index

(Not to scale)



Sediment Power Index

(Not to scale)

Fig 6.23: Spatial distribution of STI and SPI in Kodar reservoir catchment

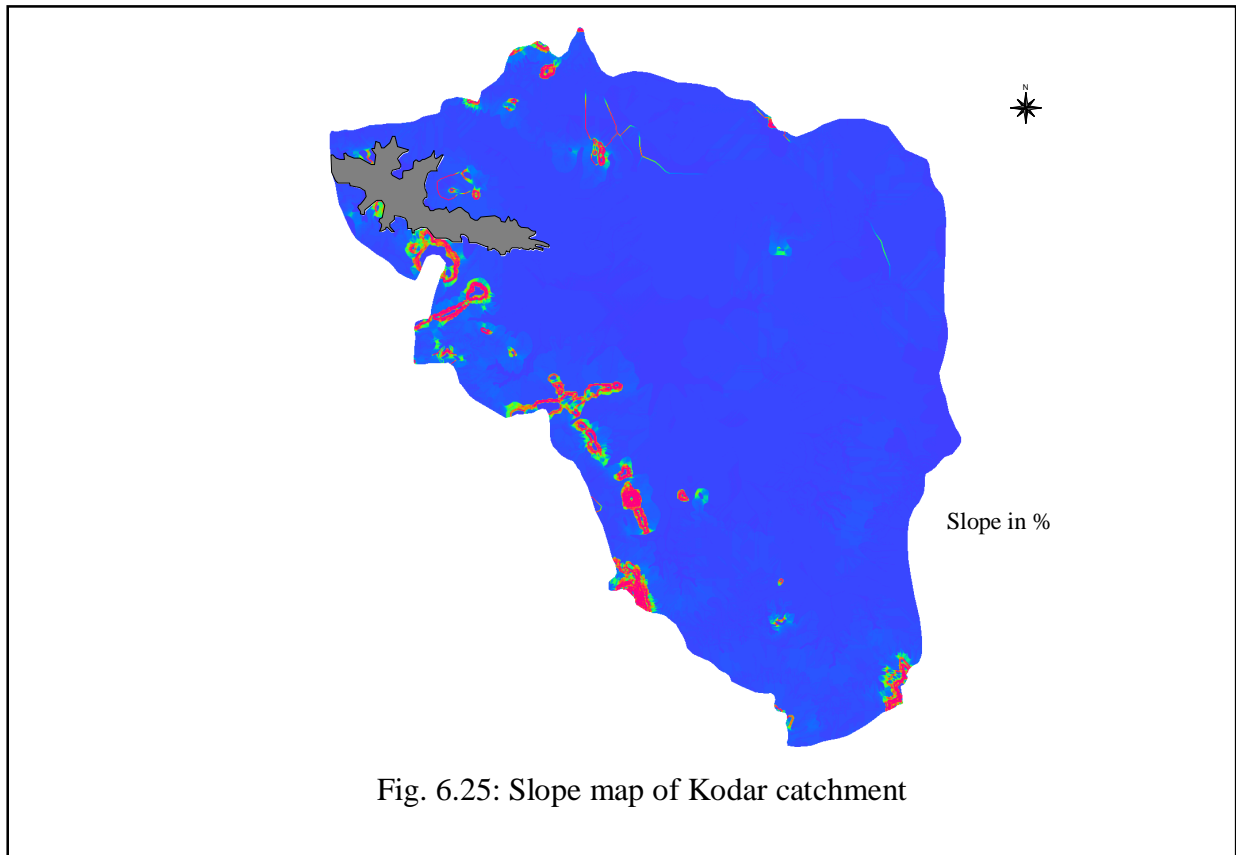
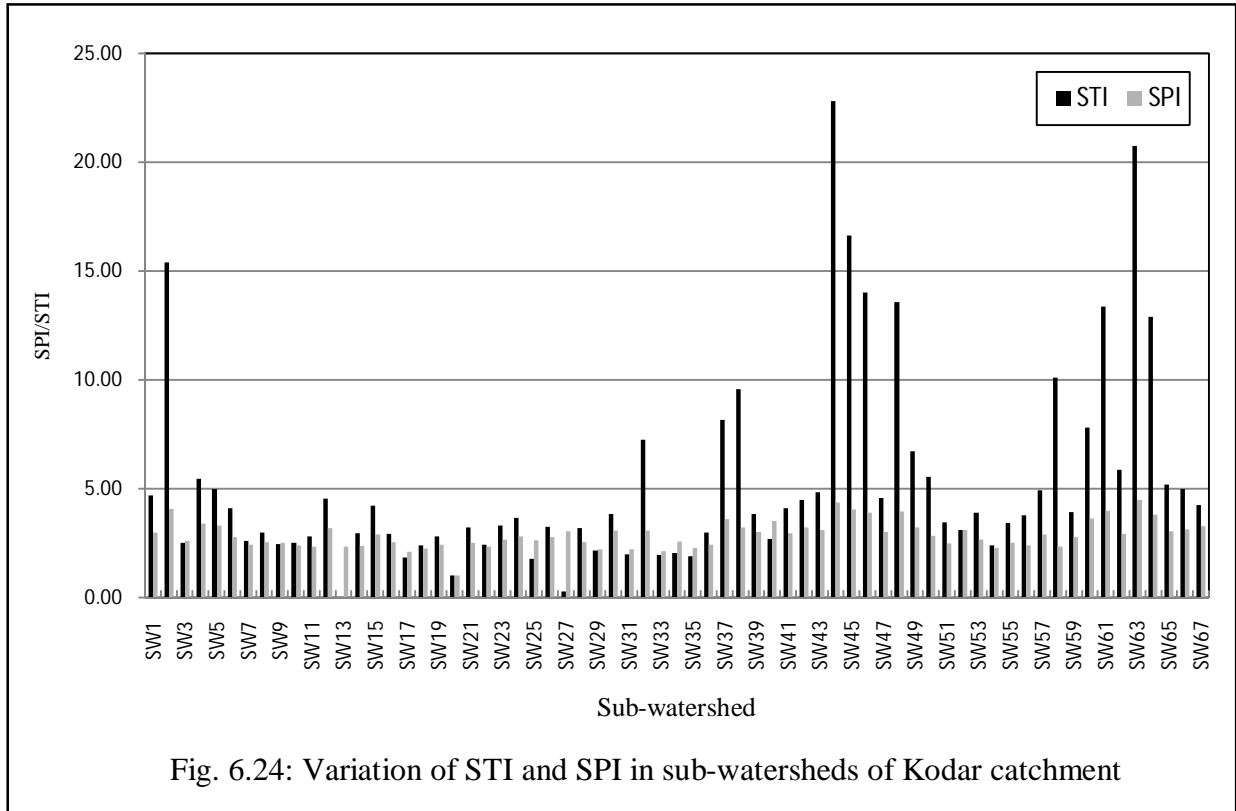




Table 6.23: Computation of drainage density and channel frequency for sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment

Sub basin	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Perimeter (km)	First Order (Length in km)		Second Order (Length in km)		Third Order (Length in km)		Fourth Order (Length in km)		Fifth Order (Length in km)		Total No.	Total length (km)	Drainage Density (km/km <sup>2</sup> )	Channel Frequency (No./km <sup>2</sup> )
			No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length				
SW-1	6.32	11.41	17	8.16	5	4.38	2	2.91	1	1.34			25	16.80	2.66	3.95
SW-2	3.71	8.26	13	8.14	3	1.95	1	1.93					17	12.02	3.24	4.58
SW-3	2.72	7.39	2	2.29					1	2.89			3	5.18	1.90	1.10
SW-4	6.39	10.67	17	9.86	4	2.72	2	1.28	1	1.65			24	15.52	2.43	3.76
SW-5	3.29	8.67	7	4.93	3	2.17	1	1.65					11	8.75	2.66	3.34
SW-6	4.87	9.62	13	7.77	2	3.22	1	2.01					16	13.00	2.67	3.28
SW-7	3.18	8.88	4	1.90	1	3.48							5	5.38	1.69	1.57
SW-8	2.94	7.40									1	2.57	1	2.57	0.87	0.34
SW-9	3.10	8.29	1	1.44							1	2.33	2	3.77	1.21	0.64
SW-10	3.39	8.00	1	1.01							1	2.49	2	3.50	1.03	0.59
SW-11	4.06	7.72	8	5.05	2	2.47	1	0.09					11	7.61	1.88	2.71
SW-12	4.32	8.95	7	5.91	1	1.84	1	2.37					9	10.12	2.35	2.09
SW-13	6.06	12.20	5	3.28	1	0.62	1	5.50					7	9.41	1.55	1.15
SW-14	3.23	8.51	1	1.03					1	3.35			2	4.38	1.36	0.62
SW-15	5.39	11.17	5	5.78	1	0.51	1	0.94	1	2.18			8	9.40	1.75	1.49
SW-16	4.92	9.22	8	7.40	2	3.03	1	1.25					11	11.68	2.38	2.24
SW-17	6.56	10.39	12	6.56	4	4.03	1	1.64					17	12.23	1.86	2.59
SW-18	6.55	13.91	4	5.05	1	3.54							5	8.58	1.31	0.76
SW-19	8.28	13.15	5	4.83	2	3.37	1	1.94					8	10.14	1.22	0.97
SW-20	6.73	12.42	3	2.77	1	4.25							4	7.02	1.04	0.59
SW-21	10.17	13.45	3	7.54	1	0.18							4	7.72	0.76	0.39
SW-22	6.22	12.10	8	5.11	2	0.69	1	3.09					11	8.88	1.43	1.77
SW-23	7.11	10.71	5	4.73	2	2.92							7	7.65	1.08	0.98

Sub basin	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Perimeter (km)	First Order (Length in km)		Second Order (Length in km)		Third Order (Length in km)		Fourth Order (Length in km)		Fifth Order (Length in km)		Total No.	Total length (km)	Drainage Density (km/km <sup>2</sup> )	Channel Frequency (No./km <sup>2</sup> )
			No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length				
SW-24	5.02	10.65	1	4.45									1	4.45	0.89	0.20
SW-25	6.10	15.33	1	1.31			1	3.88					2	5.19	0.85	0.33
SW-26	6.18	12.16	1	4.96									1	4.96	0.80	0.16
SW-27	0.05	1.10		0.00					1	0.37			1	0.37	7.18	19.40
SW-28	4.24	8.85	3	1.12	2	0.65			1	1.88			6	3.65	0.86	1.41
SW-29	4.44	10.18	2	2.77	1	0.91							3	3.68	0.83	0.68
SW-30	1.79	5.31		0.00					1	2.08			1	2.08	1.16	0.56
SW-31	5.37	10.62	2	1.74	1	0.36			1	2.99			4	5.09	0.95	0.75
SW-32	7.82	11.98	24	13.61	6	7.26	2	2.90					32	23.77	3.04	4.09
SW-33	0.34	2.50		0.00							1	0.80	1	0.80	2.36	2.94
SW-34	0.64	3.42		0.00							1	0.82	1	0.82	1.28	1.55
SW-35	1.57	5.13		0.00							1	1.65	1	1.65	1.06	0.64
SW-36	3.01	7.87	1	0.59					1	3.04			2	3.64	1.21	0.67
SW-37	0.51	3.03		0.00					1	0.94			1	0.94	1.82	1.94
SW-38	4.01	8.77	2	0.98					1	1.86			3	2.84	0.71	0.75
SW-39	2.02	6.25	2	2.44					1	1.39			3	3.82	1.89	1.48
SW-40	0.35	2.83		0.00					1	0.88			1	0.88	2.54	2.89
SW-41	2.52	8.00	6	2.81	1	0.35			1	4.19			8	7.34	2.91	3.17
SW-42	3.22	7.51	11	7.48	4	2.04	1	1.27					16	10.79	3.35	4.96
SW-43	3.69	8.97	8	4.38	2	3.40	1	1.08					11	8.86	2.40	2.98
SW-44	2.81	7.51	8	6.94	3	0.78	1	1.86					12	9.59	3.41	4.27
SW-45	4.16	9.67	10	7.57	3	2.50	1	1.66					14	11.73	2.82	3.37
SW-46	4.15	8.05	12	8.77	2	1.11	1	1.36					15	11.24	2.71	3.62
SW-47	3.32	8.80		0.00		0.00	1	3.43					1	3.43	1.03	0.30

Sub basin	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Perimeter (km)	First Order (Length in km)		Second Order (Length in km)		Third Order (Length in km)		Fourth Order (Length in km)		Fifth Order (Length in km)		Total No.	Total length (km)	Drainage Density (km/km <sup>2</sup> )	Channel Frequency (No./km <sup>2</sup> )
			No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length	No.	Length				
SW-48	3.86	8.01	13	7.84	3	1.49	1	1.97					17	11.29	2.93	4.41
SW-49	2.85	7.78	5	3.57		0.00	1	3.21					6	6.78	2.38	2.10
SW-50	7.18	10.72	2	1.47	1	3.66		0.00					3	5.13	0.71	0.42
SW-51	0.94	4.17		0.00		0.00		0.00			1	1.10	1	1.10	1.18	1.07
SW-52	1.02	4.43		0.00		0.00		0.00			1	1.52	1	1.52	1.48	0.98
SW-53	0.51	3.15	1	0.51		0.00		0.00			1	1.13	2	1.64	3.22	3.92
SW-54	9.94	14.16	4	5.51	1	0.62	1	4.25					6	10.38	1.04	0.60
SW-55	9.56	13.85	7	5.97	2	1.89	1	5.08					10	12.94	1.35	1.05
SW-56	13.05	14.50	14	13.48	3	4.23	1	2.11					18	19.82	1.52	1.38
SW-57	6.66	12.31	4	4.45	1	0.55	1	4.39					6	9.39	1.41	0.90
SW-58	4.18	10.29	2	2.15		0.00		0.00			1	2.77	3	4.92	1.18	0.72
SW-59	2.29	7.70		0.00		0.00		0.00	1	2.42			1	2.42	1.06	0.44
SW-60	10.49	12.96	21	14.98	6	6.54	3	1.47	1	2.73			31	25.72	2.45	2.96
SW-61	5.27	10.48	27	13.92	9	3.73	1	3.33					37	20.98	3.98	7.02
SW-62	2.98	7.59	3	2.10		0.00	1	1.97					4	4.07	1.36	1.34
SW-63	2.85	8.00	8	4.46	1	2.51		0.00					9	6.97	2.45	3.16
SW-64	5.41	16.50	16	6.90	2	1.66		0.00					18	8.56	1.58	3.33
SW-65	10.67	18.20	7	6.35		0.00		0.00			1	4.61	8	10.96	1.03	0.75
SW-66	7.35	12.50	21	13.49	4	5.07	1	1.09					26	19.66	2.67	3.54
SW-67	3.71	12.94	9	4.66	1	0.08		0.00					10	4.74	1.28	2.70

### 6.7.7 Prioritization using Saaty's AHP

For prioritization of sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment, Saaty's AHP has been used with nine EHPs. Considering relative importance of each EHP with other, a comparison matrix has been prepared. The comparison matrix showing relative importance and normalized values have been presented below in Table 6.24. Using approximation technique, normalized principal eigen vector has been obtained by averaging the normal values across the rows (Table 6.25). The normalized principal eigen vector whose sum is equal to 1 also shows relative weights among the criteria considered for comparison. The value of principal eigen value ( $\lambda_{max}$ ) and consistency index (*CI*) have been estimated as 10.08 and 0.135 respectively. As nine EHPs have been considered in the decision, the random consistency index (*RI*) will be 1.45. The consistency ratio (*CR*) for the present decisions has been computed using eq. 5.28 and worked out as 0.093 or 9.3%, which is less than 10 %, hence the inconsistency in the decision is acceptable and the weights obtained can be used for priority assessment.

Table 6.24: Comparison matrix for EHPs in Saaty's analysis

	<i>SL</i>	<i>SPR</i>	<i>SY</i>	<i>STI</i>	<i>Sl</i>	<i>D<sub>d</sub></i>	<i>C<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>
<i>SL</i>	1	5	3	3	5	7	7	9	9
<i>SPR</i>	0.20	1	0.33	0.33	0.33	3	3	3	3
<i>SY</i>	0.33	3.00	1	3	3	5	5	7	7
<i>STI</i>	0.33	3.00	0.33	1	3	3	5	7	9
<i>Sl</i>	0.20	3.00	0.33	0.33	1	3	3	5	7
<i>D<sub>d</sub></i>	0.14	0.33	0.20	0.33	0.33	1	3	3	5
<i>C<sub>f</sub></i>	0.14	0.33	0.20	0.20	0.33	0.33	1	3	3
<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>	0.11	0.33	0.14	0.14	0.20	0.20	0.33	1	3
<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>	0.11	0.33	0.14	0.11	0.14	0.14	0.33	0.33	1
SUM	2.57	16.33	5.69	8.45	13.34	22.68	27.67	38.33	47

Table 6.25: Computation of final weights for EHPs using Saaty's AHP technique

	<i>SL</i>	<i>SPR</i>	<i>SY</i>	<i>STI</i>	<i>Sl</i>	<i>D<sub>d</sub></i>	<i>C<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>	Eigen Vector/Weight	$\lambda$
<i>SL</i>	0.39	0.31	0.53	0.35	0.37	0.31	0.25	0.23	0.19	0.33	0.84
<i>SPR</i>	0.08	0.06	0.06	0.04	0.02	0.13	0.11	0.08	0.06	0.07	1.17
<i>SY</i>	0.13	0.18	0.18	0.35	0.22	0.22	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.20	1.14
<i>STI</i>	0.13	0.18	0.06	0.12	0.22	0.13	0.18	0.18	0.19	0.16	1.32
<i>Sl</i>	0.08	0.18	0.06	0.04	0.07	0.13	0.11	0.13	0.15	0.11	1.42
<i>D<sub>d</sub></i>	0.06	0.02	0.04	0.04	0.02	0.04	0.11	0.08	0.11	0.06	1.29
<i>C<sub>f</sub></i>	0.06	0.02	0.04	0.02	0.02	0.01	0.04	0.08	0.06	0.04	1.08
<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>	0.04	0.02	0.03	0.02	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.03	0.06	0.03	0.99
<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>	0.04	0.02	0.03	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.01	0.02	0.02	0.84
SUM	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	10.08

The weights for different EHPs obtained for priority assessment are given below:

<i>SL</i>	<i>SPR</i>	<i>SY</i>	<i>STI</i>	<i>Sl</i>	<i>D<sub>d</sub></i>	<i>C<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>	<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>
0.33	0.07	0.20	0.16	0.11	0.06	0.04	0.03	0.02

The final priority of each watershed has been estimated using normalized values of each EHP and corresponding weight obtained from Saaty's AHP analysis. The computation of priority assessment has been presented in Table 6.26. From the analysis, it has been observed that the final priorities of sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment lie in the range of 0.12 to 0.74. The final priorities of sub-watersheds have been divided in five different ranges i.e. more than 0.30 as very high, 0.30 to 0.25 as high, 0.25 to 0.20 as moderate, 0.20 to 0.15 as low and less than 0.15 as very low priority, so that environmentally stressed areas can be identified for soil conservation measures. The sub-watersheds under each category have been depicted in Fig. 6.26 and Table 6.27.

From the Saaty's AHP analysis, the composite priority for SW-44 has been computed as 0.74 and identified as the top most priority watershed. Similarly, SW-41 may be considered at the last in conservation works. The AHP analysis suggested that more than 21 sub-watersheds covering 117 km<sup>2</sup> area of Kodar reservoir catchment comes under very high and high priority and hence a scientifically developed CAT plan consisting mechanical, biological and agronomic measures should be implemented immediately in these sub-watersheds and agronomic measures and other biological measures should be adopted in other sub-watersheds in phased manner. It has also been observed that 31 sub-watersheds with total area of 101.11 km<sup>2</sup> can be kept in low and very low priority where agronomic measures with development of awareness in farmers should be useful for conservation point of view. From the analysis, it has been observed that the sub-watersheds under very high and high priority are either on higher slope from where soil erosion are more or near the reservoir from where eroded material easily transported to the reservoir through dense network of drainage.

## 6.8 Development of CAT Plan

Conservation of natural resources is essential for sustainable development and such measures especially for soil and water carried out on a watershed basis is very useful for control of soil erosion. The scientifically developed catchment area treatment plan identifies environmentally stressed areas, necessity and intensity of mechanical and biological measures to arrest further soil erosion and conserve water within the watershed. As the information regarding various factors affecting the status of watershed vary spatially, the RS and GIS play an important role for identification of areas suitable for soil conservation measures and type of treatment required. For development of CAT plan for environmentally stressed areas in Kodar reservoir catchment, interpretation of satellite data, derivation of secondary information from toposheets and field surveys have been used as basis. Various thematic layers such as geology, land use, soil, slope, drainage, geomorphology have been used for selecting different soil and water conservation measures in sub-watersheds of Kodar reservoir catchments. The combinations of different criteria for selection of soil and water conservation measures presented in Table 5.3 have been used as guiding principles for deciding the conservation measures in the field.

Table 6.26: Computation of normalized values for EHPs and Final priority of sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment

Sub Watershed	<i>SL</i>		<i>SPR</i>		<i>SY</i>		<i>STI</i>		<i>SI</i>		<i>D<sub>d</sub></i>		<i>C<sub>f</sub></i>		<i>R<sub>f</sub></i>		<i>R<sub>C</sub></i>		Final Priority
	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	Ori. Value	Nor. Value	
<b>Weight</b>	<b>0.33</b>		<b>0.07</b>		<b>0.20</b>		<b>0.16</b>		<b>0.11</b>		<b>0.06</b>		<b>0.04</b>		<b>0.03</b>		<b>0.02</b>		
SW-1	6.71	0.09	2.16	0.41	0.183	0.75	4.69	0.21	2.10	0.18	2.66	0.30	3.95	0.20	0.33	0.03	0.61	0.60	0.30
SW-2	39.34	0.53	1.90	0.36	0.176	0.72	15.40	0.67	7.43	0.64	3.24	0.39	4.58	0.23	0.40	0.05	0.68	0.72	0.56
SW-3	0.74	0.00	2.27	0.43	0.072	0.30	2.52	0.11	0.69	0.06	1.90	0.18	1.10	0.05	0.48	0.06	0.63	0.62	0.14
SW-4	3.20	0.04	1.81	0.34	0.194	0.80	5.46	0.24	1.72	0.15	2.43	0.27	3.76	0.19	0.44	0.06	0.71	0.75	0.29
SW-5	4.39	0.05	2.12	0.40	0.117	0.48	4.98	0.22	1.63	0.14	2.66	0.30	3.34	0.17	0.25	0.02	0.55	0.50	0.22
SW-6	1.50	0.01	2.01	0.38	0.092	0.38	4.10	0.18	1.57	0.13	2.67	0.30	3.28	0.16	0.38	0.04	0.66	0.68	0.19
SW-7	1.39	0.01	1.97	0.37	0.148	0.61	2.61	0.11	0.75	0.06	1.69	0.15	1.57	0.07	0.24	0.02	0.51	0.43	0.20
SW-8	0.99	0.01	2.08	0.40	0.100	0.41	2.98	0.13	0.68	0.06	0.87	0.03	0.34	0.01	0.53	0.07	0.68	0.70	0.16
SW-9	1.54	0.01	2.25	0.43	0.129	0.53	2.46	0.11	0.74	0.06	1.21	0.08	0.64	0.03	0.36	0.04	0.57	0.53	0.18
SW-10	9.11	0.12	2.03	0.39	0.126	0.52	2.50	0.11	0.82	0.07	1.03	0.05	0.59	0.02	0.42	0.05	0.66	0.69	0.21
SW-11	0.76	0.00	1.09	0.19	0.128	0.52	2.81	0.12	0.71	0.06	1.88	0.18	2.71	0.13	0.90	0.15	0.86	1.00	0.18
SW-12	0.85	0.00	2.17	0.41	0.045	0.18	4.53	0.20	1.06	0.09	2.35	0.25	2.09	0.10	0.63	0.09	0.68	0.71	0.14
SW-13	1.41	0.01	1.99	0.38	0.153	0.63	0.01	0.00	0.51	0.04	1.55	0.13	1.15	0.05	0.25	0.02	0.51	0.43	0.18
SW-14	1.48	0.01	2.26	0.43	0.130	0.53	2.94	0.13	0.51	0.04	1.36	0.10	0.62	0.02	0.37	0.04	0.56	0.51	0.18
SW-15	1.12	0.01	2.70	0.52	0.140	0.58	4.21	0.18	0.68	0.06	1.75	0.16	1.49	0.07	0.77	0.12	0.54	0.48	0.21
SW-16	1.29	0.01	1.59	0.30	0.103	0.42	2.91	0.13	0.77	0.07	2.38	0.26	2.24	0.11	0.35	0.04	0.73	0.79	0.17
SW-17	1.86	0.02	1.70	0.32	0.171	0.70	1.83	0.08	0.33	0.03	1.86	0.18	2.59	0.13	0.82	0.13	0.77	0.85	0.22
SW-18	2.09	0.02	1.28	0.23	0.162	0.66	2.40	0.10	0.61	0.05	1.31	0.09	0.76	0.03	0.16	0.00	0.43	0.29	0.19
SW-19	1.92	0.02	2.15	0.41	0.170	0.70	2.81	0.12	0.65	0.06	1.22	0.08	0.97	0.04	0.29	0.03	0.60	0.58	0.22
SW-20	1.90	0.02	2.16	0.41	0.148	0.61	1.00	0.04	0.59	0.05	1.04	0.05	0.59	0.02	0.29	0.03	0.55	0.49	0.18
SW-21	1.81	0.02	1.96	0.37	0.160	0.65	3.22	0.14	0.65	0.06	0.76	0.01	0.39	0.01	0.61	0.09	0.71	0.75	0.21
SW-22	1.85	0.02	2.14	0.41	0.188	0.77	2.42	0.11	0.55	0.05	1.43	0.11	1.77	0.08	0.31	0.03	0.53	0.47	0.23
SW-23	1.66	0.02	1.56	0.29	0.183	0.75	3.29	0.14	0.72	0.06	1.08	0.06	0.98	0.04	0.79	0.13	0.78	0.87	0.23
SW-24	1.88	0.02	2.56	0.49	0.155	0.64	3.66	0.16	0.80	0.07	0.89	0.03	0.20	0.00	0.63	0.09	0.56	0.51	0.21

SW-25	3.50	0.04	0.40	0.05	0.149	0.61	1.78	0.08	0.91	0.08	0.85	0.02	0.33	0.01	0.17	0.00	0.33	0.13	0.16
SW-26	3.06	0.04	2.01	0.38	0.140	0.57	3.26	0.14	0.91	0.08	0.80	0.01	0.16	0.00	0.21	0.01	0.53	0.45	0.19
SW-27	0.51	0.00	2.21	0.42	0.000	0.00	0.28	0.01	0.01	0.00	7.18	1.00	19.40	1.00	0.38	0.04	0.53	0.47	0.14
SW-28	2.76	0.03	1.93	0.37	0.122	0.50	3.18	0.14	0.62	0.05	0.86	0.02	1.41	0.07	0.40	0.05	0.68	0.71	0.18
SW-29	2.38	0.03	2.09	0.40	0.121	0.50	2.17	0.09	0.58	0.05	0.83	0.02	0.68	0.03	0.25	0.02	0.54	0.48	0.17
SW-30	1.43	0.01	1.24	0.23	0.104	0.43	3.82	0.17	0.51	0.04	1.16	0.07	0.56	0.02	0.51	0.07	0.80	0.91	0.16
SW-31	2.11	0.02	3.01	0.59	0.123	0.50	1.98	0.09	0.28	0.02	0.95	0.04	0.75	0.03	0.98	0.16	0.60	0.58	0.18
SW-32	7.67	0.10	3.43	0.67	0.244	1.00	7.24	0.32	3.14	0.27	3.04	0.36	4.09	0.20	1.63	0.29	0.69	0.72	0.41
SW-33	0.99	0.01	2.08	0.40	0.071	0.29	1.94	0.08	0.12	0.01	2.36	0.25	2.94	0.14	0.58	0.08	0.68	0.72	0.14
SW-34	1.38	0.01	2.74	0.53	0.081	0.33	2.03	0.09	0.53	0.05	1.28	0.09	1.55	0.07	1.21	0.21	0.69	0.73	0.15
SW-35	1.88	0.02	1.71	0.32	0.095	0.39	1.90	0.08	0.50	0.04	1.06	0.05	0.64	0.02	0.68	0.10	0.75	0.82	0.15
SW-36	1.78	0.02	2.26	0.43	0.124	0.51	2.97	0.13	0.56	0.05	1.21	0.08	0.67	0.03	0.42	0.05	0.61	0.59	0.18
SW-37	1.03	0.01	2.00	0.38	0.086	0.35	8.17	0.36	0.55	0.05	1.82	0.17	1.94	0.09	0.64	0.10	0.70	0.75	0.19
SW-38	39.00	0.53	5.05	1.00	0.125	0.51	9.57	0.42	4.97	0.43	0.71	0.00	0.75	0.03	2.27	0.42	0.66	0.67	0.48
SW-39	1.15	0.01	2.75	0.53	0.128	0.53	3.82	0.17	0.74	0.06	1.89	0.18	1.48	0.07	0.98	0.16	0.65	0.66	0.21
SW-40	0.98	0.01	2.46	0.47	0.085	0.35	2.68	0.12	0.43	0.04	2.54	0.28	2.89	0.14	0.57	0.08	0.55	0.49	0.16
SW-41	1.75	0.02	1.92	0.36	0.023	0.09	4.11	0.18	1.10	0.09	2.91	0.34	3.17	0.16	0.27	0.02	0.50	0.41	0.12
SW-42	2.75	0.03	2.00	0.38	0.058	0.24	4.48	0.20	1.32	0.11	3.35	0.41	4.96	0.25	0.76	0.12	0.72	0.78	0.18
SW-43	2.31	0.02	2.14	0.41	0.034	0.14	4.83	0.21	1.25	0.11	2.40	0.26	2.98	0.15	0.25	0.02	0.58	0.54	0.14
SW-44	73.21	1.00	2.25	0.43	0.090	0.37	22.82	1.00	11.63	1.00	3.41	0.42	4.27	0.21	0.46	0.06	0.63	0.62	0.74
SW-45	42.43	0.58	2.76	0.53	0.092	0.38	16.63	0.73	8.15	0.70	2.82	0.33	3.37	0.17	0.79	0.12	0.56	0.51	0.53
SW-46	0.54	0.00	1.25	0.23	0.113	0.46	14.03	0.61	7.29	0.63	2.71	0.31	3.62	0.18	0.61	0.09	0.81	0.92	0.31
SW-47	1.90	0.02	2.17	0.41	0.117	0.48	4.57	0.20	0.78	0.07	1.03	0.05	0.30	0.01	0.32	0.03	0.54	0.48	0.18
SW-48	33.68	0.46	1.58	0.29	0.056	0.23	13.59	0.60	6.27	0.54	2.93	0.34	4.41	0.22	0.59	0.09	0.76	0.84	0.41

SW-49	31.37	0.42	2.32	0.44	0.139	0.69	6.73	0.29	3.11	0.27	2.38	0.26	2.10	0.10	0.43	0.05	0.59	0.57	0.41
SW-50	7.67	0.10	1.28	0.23	0.070	0.57	5.53	0.24	2.35	0.20	0.71	0.00	0.42	0.01	0.45	0.06	0.79	0.89	0.24
SW-51	1.41	0.01	2.00	0.38	0.061	0.29	3.45	0.15	0.10	0.01	1.18	0.07	1.07	0.05	0.46	0.06	0.68	0.71	0.13
SW-52	1.10	0.01	2.18	0.42	0.099	0.25	3.11	0.14	0.01	0.00	1.48	0.12	0.98	0.04	0.52	0.07	0.66	0.67	0.13
SW-53	3.63	0.04	2.18	0.42	0.165	0.41	3.91	0.17	0.26	0.02	3.22	0.39	3.92	0.20	0.48	0.06	0.65	0.66	0.20
SW-54	2.29	0.02	2.70	0.52	0.198	0.68	2.39	0.10	0.50	0.04	1.04	0.05	0.60	0.02	0.83	0.13	0.62	0.62	0.22
SW-55	5.36	0.07	2.12	0.40	0.234	0.81	3.41	0.15	1.04	0.09	1.35	0.10	1.05	0.05	0.34	0.03	0.63	0.62	0.27
SW-56	3.71	0.04	1.59	0.30	0.174	0.96	3.78	0.17	1.32	0.11	1.52	0.13	1.38	0.06	0.85	0.14	0.78	0.88	0.29
SW-57	5.57	0.07	2.56	0.49	0.132	0.71	4.92	0.22	1.92	0.17	1.41	0.11	0.90	0.04	0.64	0.10	0.55	0.50	0.27
SW-58	6.01	0.08	2.35	0.45	0.107	0.54	10.09	0.44	0.45	0.04	1.18	0.07	0.72	0.03	0.68	0.10	0.50	0.41	0.25
SW-59	2.85	0.03	2.16	0.41	0.069	0.44	3.92	0.17	0.48	0.04	1.06	0.05	0.44	0.01	0.57	0.08	0.49	0.39	0.17
SW-60	9.98	0.13	1.43	0.26	0.062	0.28	7.80	0.34	3.23	0.28	2.45	0.27	2.96	0.15	0.67	0.10	0.79	0.89	0.24
SW-61	19.19	0.26	2.17	0.42	0.149	0.25	13.38	0.59	6.49	0.56	3.98	0.51	7.02	0.36	0.32	0.03	0.60	0.58	0.37
SW-62	10.68	0.14	3.00	0.58	0.061	0.61	5.85	0.26	2.16	0.19	1.36	0.10	1.34	0.06	1.16	0.20	0.65	0.66	0.29
SW-63	38.08	0.52	2.19	0.42	0.029	0.25	20.75	0.91	9.93	0.85	2.45	0.27	3.16	0.16	0.30	0.03	0.56	0.51	0.51
SW-64	23.93	0.32	0.13	0.00	0.189	0.12	12.91	0.57	5.70	0.49	1.58	0.13	3.33	0.16	1.68	0.30	0.25	0.00	0.29
SW-65	9.39	0.12	1.49	0.28	0.151	0.77	5.18	0.23	1.92	0.16	1.03	0.05	0.75	0.03	0.83	0.13	0.40	0.26	0.28
SW-66	4.33	0.05	2.67	0.52	0.143	0.62	4.98	0.22	1.86	0.16	2.67	0.30	3.54	0.18	0.72	0.11	0.59	0.56	0.27
SW-67	9.07	0.12	1.74	0.33	0.139	0.59	4.24	0.19	1.67	0.14	1.33	0.10	2.80	0.14	5.15	1.00	0.28	0.06	0.26



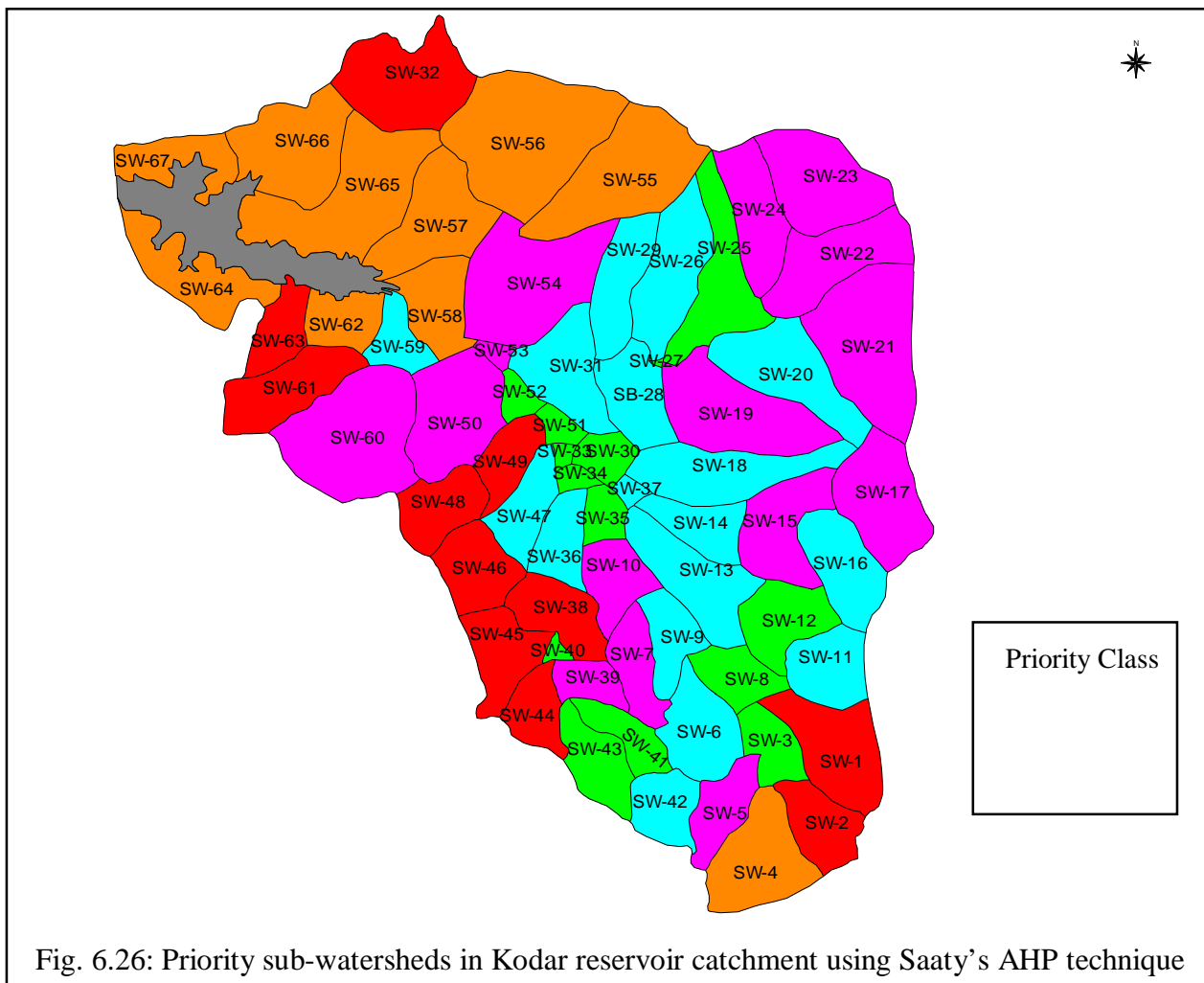


Fig. 6.26: Priority sub-watersheds in Kodar reservoir catchment using Saaty’s AHP technique

Table 6.27: Area under each priority in Kodar catchment

S.N.	Priority Class	Range of final priority	No. of watershed	Watershed	Total area (sq. km)
1.	V. high	Up to 0.30	11	SW-1, SW-2, SW -32, SW-38, SW-44. SW-45, SW -46, SW-48, SW-49, SW -61 and SW-63	47.81
2.	High	0.30 to 0.25	10	SW-4, SW-55, SW-56, SW-57, SW-58, SW-62,SW-64, SW-65, SW-66 and SW-67	70.03
3.	Moderate	0.25 to 0.20	15	SW-5, SW-7, SW-10, SW-15, SW-17, SW-19, SW-21, SW-22, SW-23, SW-24, SW-39, SW-50, SW-53, SW-54 and SW-60	88.75
4.	Low	0.20 to 0.17	17	SW-6, SW-9, SW-11, SW-13, SW-14, SW-16, SW-18, SW-20, SW-26, SW-28, SW-29, SW-31, SW-36, SW-37, SW-42, SW-47 and SW-59	72.11
5.	V. low	Less than 0.17	14	SW-3, SW-8, SW-12, SW-25, SW-27,SW-30, SW-33, SW-34, SW-35, SW-40, SW-41, SW-43, SW-51 and SW-52	29.00
	Total				307.71

The drainage line treatment is very important and most relevant aspect in rain-fed areas. Checking the velocity of runoff, harnessing the rainwater lost through these drains and impounding them through various soil and water conservation measures would result in improving the water resources of an area. The mechanical measures for soil conservation measure were proposed only in very high and high priority watersheds. The areas under various agronomic and biological measures for agriculture, open forest and scrub lands have been finalized using cross facility of ILWIS and an attribute table in which suitable measures have been provided. Initially, land use, geomorphology, slope and soil maps have been crossed using cross facility of raster operation which provides a raster map having different combinations.

A column in histogram has been created and on the basis of different combinations in histogram, the suitable soil conservation measures have been suggested for different combinations of landuse, geology, geomorphology and soil in priority sub-watersheds. The attribute map operation has been used to give areas suitable for various agronomic and biological measures such as contour farming, bolder bunds, reforestation, agroforestry etc. The map showing CAT plan of the study area consisting of suitable areas for agronomic and biological soil conservation measures in different sub-watersheds has been presented in Fig. 6.27 (a), while location of different mechanical measures presented in Fig. 6.27 (b).

The agronomic and biological measures have been suggested in all sub-watersheds, while mechanical measures only in very high and high priority sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment. As the gram panchayats are considered the administrative units for implementation of various conservation works, the areas of various agronomic and biological measures and nos. of mechanical structures have been determined in different gram panchayats falling under various sub-watersheds of Kodar reservoir catchment. The areas under agronomic and biological measures and numbers of mechanical structures in different gram panchayats have been presented in Table 6.28 (a) and 6.28 (b). The results obtained from the study will be useful for planners and administrative bodies to implement conservation measures in different gram panchayats. Other agronomic measures such as contour farming; mulching; application of bio-fertilizers; minimum tillage etc. should be employed in all agriculture areas of the catchment. The CAT plan developed for the study area can be used as a model for prioritization and scientific development of CAT plan for other erosion prone areas in the state.

From the analysis, it has been observed that about 4152.59 ha area in Kodar catchment which is level land with agriculture found suitable for farm ponds. Considering the suitability and runoff availability, farm ponds in these areas can be constructed to arrest excess flow of water and use of stored water during summer season. The CAT plan suggests 101.61 ha land for afforestation, 114.86 ha for agro-forestry and 11.41 ha land for development of grazing land which will be beneficial for rural population for their additional income and environmental health of the watershed. Agronomic practices including such contour bunds, strip cropping and bench terracing etc. have been suggested according to slope in agricultural lands should be implanted through financial aids and generating awareness among the farmers through seminar, workshops and visits of other well conserved watershed. The CAT Plan suggests, 37 gully plugs, 22 nala plugs, 21 boulder bunds and 6 check dams in Kodar catchment. The gram panchayats wise distribution of mechanical structures presented in the table may be helpful to the authorities for allocation of budget to construct these structures.

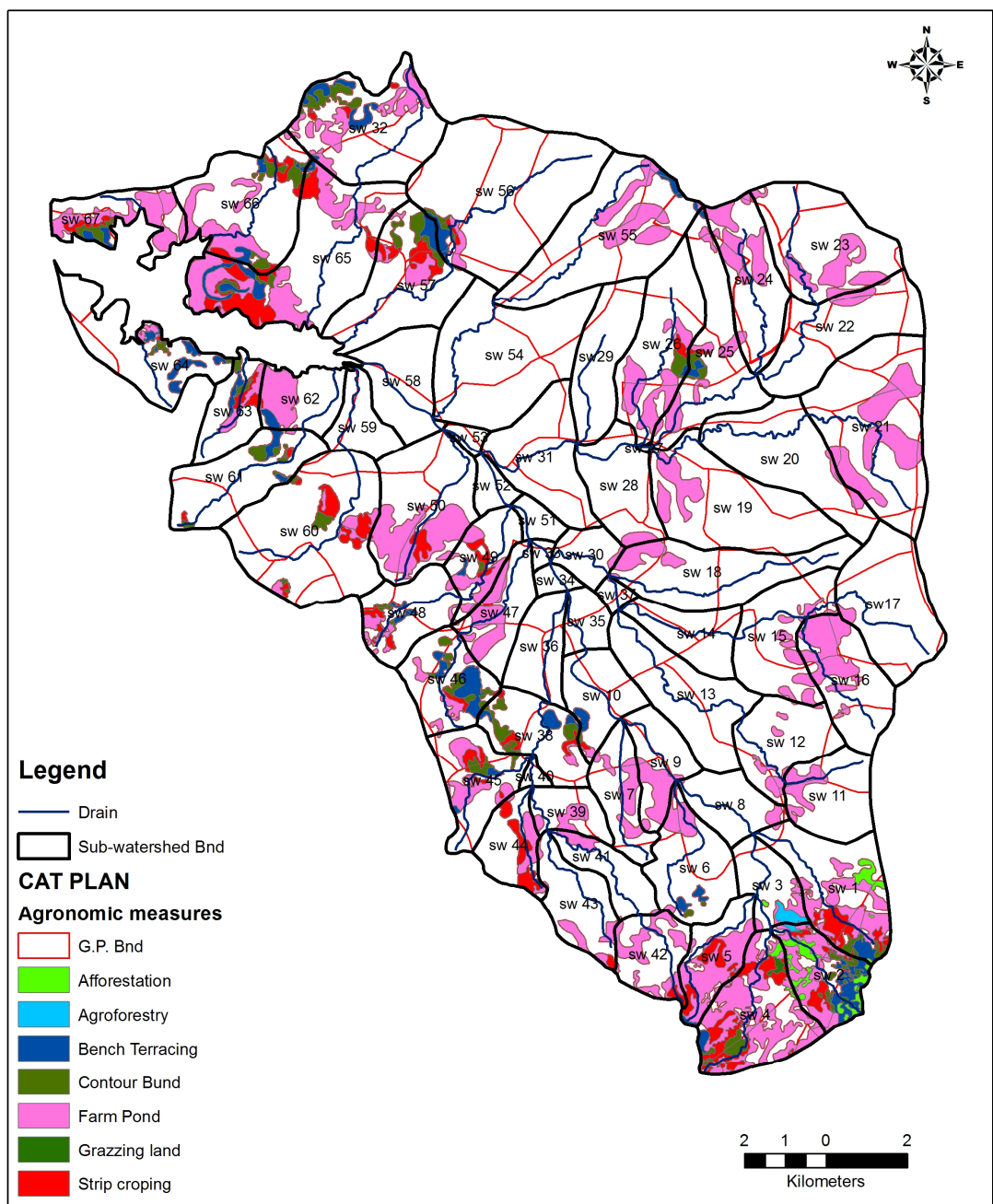


Fig. 6.27 (a): Agronomic and biological measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment

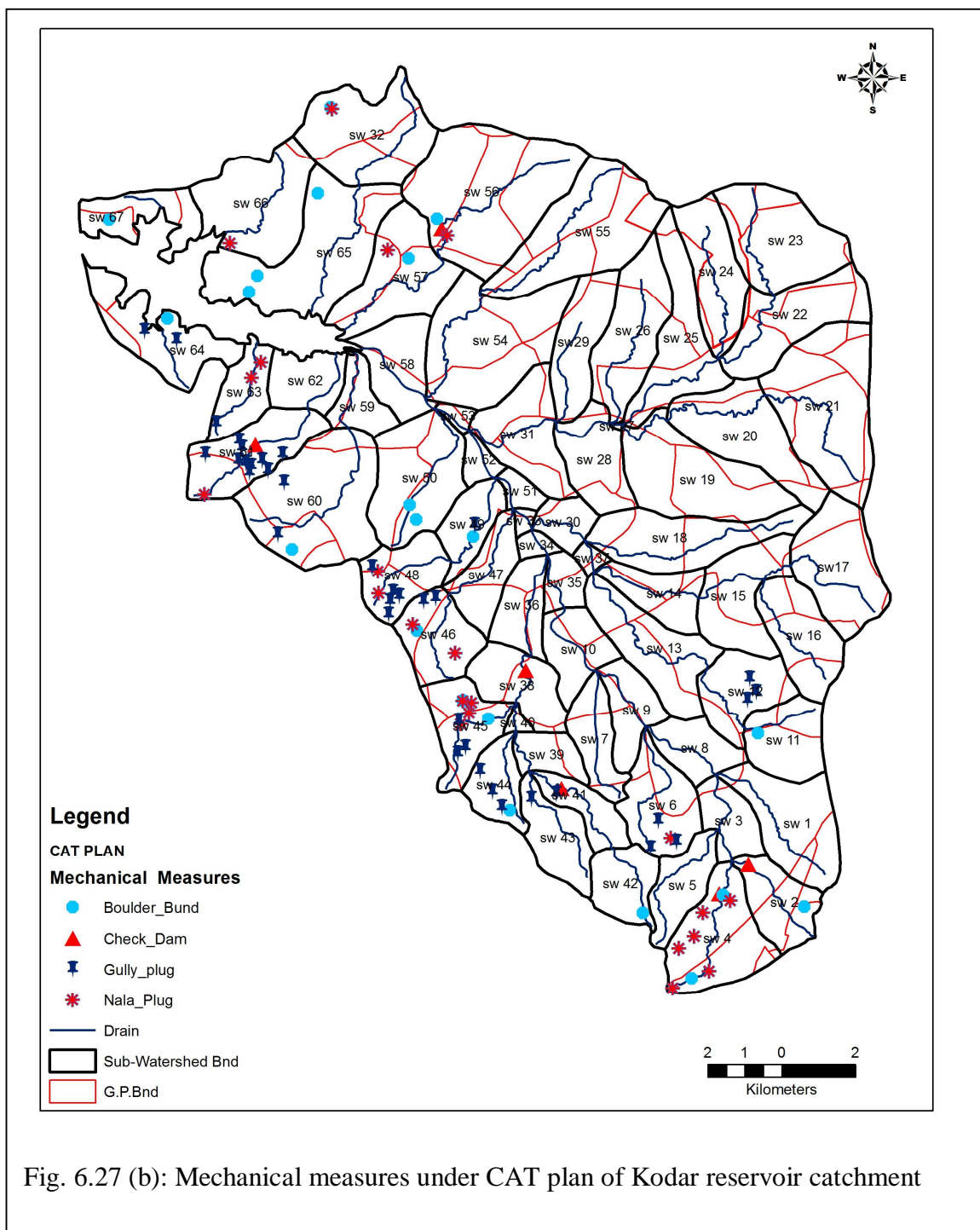


Fig. 6.27 (b): Mechanical measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment

Table 6.28 (a): Agronomic and biological soil conservation measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment

Sub-watershed	Gram Panhayat	Area under agronomic and biological soil conservation measures (ha)						
		Contour Bund	Bench Terracing	Strip cropping	Farm Pond	Afforestation	Agro forestry	Development of grazing land
SW-1	Bhimkhoj	-	37.73	-	85.91	19.38	85.91	-
	Junwani kalan	7.49	0.40	11.13	17.80	-	-	-
	Paterapali	-	-	-	-	2.15	-	-
	Tendulthak	-	19.82	-	-	7.10	-	-
SW-2	Bhimkhoj	0.01	-	8.67	62.85	31.30	5.66	0.84
	Ghunchapalika	2.90	40.61	-	8.28	22.47	-	-
	Junwani kalan	12.79	6.53	25.30	54.81	6.68	-	-
	Tendulthak	5.98	12.02	0.99	0.00	2.23	-	2.10
SW-3	Bhimkhoj	-	-	-	30.15	1.64	23.29	-
SW-4	Bhimkhoj	12.38	10.70	72.43	167.90	8.66	-	8.50
	Junwani kalan	15.12	-	25.93	120.68	-	-	-
	Bokramuda kala	0.08	-	2.40	1.17	-	-	-
	Ghunchapalika	-	-	-	5.27	-	-	-
SW-5	Bhimkhoj	-	3.93	44.16	161.42	-	-	-
SW-6	Bhimkhoj	4.03	14.23	-	4.59	-	-	-
	Kashibahara	-	-	-	22.39	-	-	-
	Paterapali	-	-	-	30.04	-	-	-
SW-7	Anwaradabri	-	-	-	13.44	-	-	-
	Kashibahara	-	-	-	59.91	-	-	-
SW-8	Bhimkhoj	-	-	-	0.85	-	-	-
	Paterapali	-	-	-	16.11	-	-	-
SW-9	Paterapali	-	-	-	2.88	-	-	-
	Anwaradabri	-	-	-	2.51	-	-	-
	Kashibahara	-	-	-	76.76	-	-	-
SW-10	Anwaradabri	2.35	12.06	3.04	5.70	-	-	-
SW-11	Bhimkhoj	-	-	-	34.03	-	-	-
	Dawanbod	-	-	-	25.82	-	-	-
	Siripatharimu	-	-	-	2.96	-	-	-
SW-12	Bhimkhoj	-	-	-	1.68	-	-	-
	Dawanbod	-	-	-	19.93	-	-	-
	Paterapali	-	-	-	16.31	-	-	-
SW-15	Dawanbod	-	-	-	29.97	-	-	-
	Gaboud	-	-	-	41.41	-	-	-
	Khusrupali	-	-	-	0.20	-	-	-
	Sukharidabri	-	-	-	3.81	-	-	-
SW-16	Dawanbod	-	-	-	61.42	-	-	-
	Gaboud	-	-	-	75.40	-	-	-
	Siripathari mu	-	-	-	3.71	-	-	-
	Sukharidabri	-	-	-	22.86	-	-	-
SW-17	Sukharidabri	-	-	-	12.34	-	-	-
SW-18	Barbaspur	-	-	-	14.79	-	-	-
	Kanharपुरi	-	-	-	51.38	-	-	-
SW-19	Barbaspur	-	-	-	94.21	-	-	-
SW-20	Bhatgaon	-	-	-	8.31	-	-	-
	Nortora	-	-	-	13.65	-	-	-
SW-21	Barkel(Bazar)	-	-	-	6.44	-	-	-
	Bhatgaon	-	-	-	10.20	-	-	-
	Nortora	-	-	-	201.35	-	-	-
	Pachri (Pachur)	-	-	-	37.71	-	-	-
SW-22	Chhindpan	-	-	-	19.14	-	-	-
	Singhanpur	-	-	-	13.87	-	-	-
SW-23	Chhindoali	-	-	-	5.37	-	-	-
	Chhindpan	-	-	-	126.90	-	-	-
	Sindhauri	-	-	-	1.63	-	-	-
SW-24	Bawankera	-	-	-	25.72	-	-	-
	Chhindoali	-	-	-	2.88	-	-	-
	Sindhauri	-	0.52	-	101.68	-	-	-
SW-25	Sindhauri	-	2.53	-	5.08	-	-	-

	Chaukbeda	14.32	9.35	4.71	14.03	-	-	-
	Bawankera	-	-	-	18.77	-	-	-
	Bhatgaon	-	-	-	0.21	-	-	-
	Patharri	-	-	-	37.92	-	-	-
SW-26	Chaukbeda	16.05	3.86	10.54	61.23	-	-	-
	Patharri	-	-	-	73.93	-	-	-
SW-28	Barbaspur	-	-	-	0.09	-	-	-
	Kanharpuri	-	-	-	21.33	-	-	-
SW-30	Kanharpuri	-	-	-	7.82	-	-	-
SW-32	Sirpur	38.18	41.27	9.29	103.27	-	-	-
	Nawagaon	-	1.99	-	15.32	-	-	-
	Patewa	-	-	-	5.97	-	-	-
SW-37	Kanharpuri	-	-	-	1.64	-	-	-
SW-38	Anwaradabri	11.15	20.03	7.90	7.88	-	-	-
	Khallari	29.00	4.81	12.22	-	-	-	-
	Bhimkhoj	0.66	-	-	-	-	-	-
SW-39	Bhimkhoj	-	-	-	34.86	-	-	-
	Kashibahara	-	-	-	4.90	-	-	-
SW-41	Bhimkhoj	-	-	-	27.00	-	-	-
SW-42	Bhimkhoj	-	-	11.02	101.91	-	-	-
SW-43	Bhimkhoj	-	-	5.92	45.20	-	-	-
SW-44	Bhimkhoj	-	-	51.35	42.79	-	-	-
SW-45	Bhimkhoj	13.85	7.68	7.94	53.33	-	-	-
	Khallari	4.52	-	15.05	25.58	-	-	-
SW-46	Khallari	26.54	55.00	9.66	26.44	-	-	-
	Onkarband	5.67	47.81	-	9.83	-	-	-
SW-47	Kanharpuri	-	-	-	38.71	-	-	-
	Khallari	-	-	-	43.21	-	-	-
	Pali	-	-	-	25.29	-	-	-
SW-48	Onkarband	3.89	6.52	17.20	25.58	-	-	-
	Pali	-	2.96	-	6.94	-	-	-
	Soram	1.72	-	0.43	-	-	-	-
SW-49	Pali	2.86	4.56	20.73	70.35	-	-	-
	Kanharpuri	-	-	-	1.56	-	-	-
SW-50	Pali	-	-	24.01	119.55	-	-	-
	Soram	-	-	0.64	97.61	-	-	-
SW-55	Bawankera	-	7.63	-	72.91	-	-	-
	Chhindoali	-	3.73	-	3.90	-	-	-
	Sindhauri	-	3.71	-	8.76	-	-	-
	Chirko	-	-	-	53.04	-	-	-
	Manpur	-	-	-	11.98	-	-	-
SW-56	Khatta	0.30	1.64	-	8.51	-	-	-
	Patewa	10.21	19.06	3.64	5.01	-	-	-
	Torla	0.46	0.42	2.68	8.98	-	-	-
SW-57	Khatta	-	0.28	21.53	32.71	-	-	-
	Patewa	31.50	21.28	11.09	3.63	-	-	-
	Nawagaon	0.17	-	11.93	7.23	-	-	-
SW-60	Hadaband	2.79	-	4.24	7.31	-	-	-
	Soram	16.04	-	56.88	29.22	-	-	-
SW-61	Soram	23.09	18.52	3.42	2.11	-	-	-
	Mohandi (Mohad)	4.43	-	2.26	-	-	-	-
SW-62	Soram	-	12.62	1.88	102.19	-	-	-
SW-63	Soram	11.61	12.35	21.09	32.18	-	-	-
SW-64	Soram	8.20	41.01	1.39	9.41	-	-	-
SW-65	Nawagaon	15.04	48.47	132.82	259.39	-	-	-
	Patewa	-	-	1.62	11.60	-	-	-
SW-66	Nawagaon	42.08	21.18	36.66	124.97	-	-	-
	Sirpur	-	-	-	2.19	-	-	-
SW-67	Nawagaon	18.08	14.74	14.85	86.28	-	-	-
	Banskunda	1.01	-	1.06	55.45	-	-	-
TOTAL		416.55	593.56	731.7	4152.59	101.61	114.86	11.44

Table 6.28 (b): Mechanical soil conservation measures under CAT plan of Kodar reservoir catchment

Sub-watershed	Gram Panhayat	No. of mechanical measures			
		Boulder Bund	Check Dam	Gully plug	Nala Plug
SW-2	Bhimkhoj	1	1		
SW-4	Bhimkhoj	1	1		4
SW-6	Junwani kalan	1			2
	Bhimkhoj			3	1
SW-11	Bhimkhoj	1			
SW-12	Dawanbod			3	
SW-32	Sirpur	1			1
SW-38	Anwaradabri		1		
SW-41	Bhimkhoj		1	1	
SW-42	Bhimkhoj	1			
SW-43	Bhimkhoj			1	
SW-44	Bhimkhoj	1		3	
SW-45	Bhimkhoj	1		3	2
	Khallari	1			2
SW-46	Khallari				1
	Onkarband	1		2	1
SW-48	Onkarband			4	2
	Soram			1	
SW-49	Pali	1		1	
SW-50	Pali	2			
SW-56	Torla				1
	Patewa	1	1		
SW-57	Khatta	1			
	Nawagaon				1
SW-60	Soram			1	
	Hadaband	1		1	
SW-61	Soram		1	9	
	Mohandi (Mohad)			1	1
SW-63	Soram			1	2
SW-64	Soram	1		2	
SW-65	Soram	3			
SW-66	Nawagaon				1
SW-67	Nawagaon	1			
TOTAL		21	6	37	22

### 6.9 Design of Check Dams under CAT Plan

The check dams are the major mechanical structures should be designed on the basis of scientific inputs and standard design procedure to get maximum benefits in the terms of

availability of water and soil conservation. All six check dams proposed for soil and water conservation measures (CD-1 to CD-6) have been designed on the basis of detailed survey of the study area and procedure given in the methodology. The design flood, afflux, cross-section, cut-off depths etc. of all the check dams have been estimated and presented in Table 6.29.

Table: 6.29: Design details of check dams (CD-1 to CD-6) under CAT plan of Kodar catchment

Particulars	CD-1	CD-2	CD-3	CD-4	CD-5	CD-6
Catchment area (km <sup>2</sup> )	10.8	2.84	22.0	5.18	5.4	3.5
Nala bed slope	1:38.3	1:31.9	1:385.6	1:26.6	1:53.8	1:41.2
Nala bed level (m)	301.3	302.3	316.4	322.9	333.1	335.5
Nala width (m)	8.0	7.0	7.0	17.0	6.0	7.0
H.F. L. (m)	304.3	304.3	319.4	324.9	335.1	337.5
Top level of Check dam (m)	302.0	303.3	318.4	323.9	334.1	336.5
Height of Dam (m)	0.70	1.0	2.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Design flood (cumecs)	199.7	136.7	105.4	217.6	194.3	253.2
Up-stream cutoff level (m)	299.3	300.3	314.4	320.9	331.1	333.5
Down-stream cutoff level (m)	299.3	300.3	314.4	320.9	331.1	333.5
Stop dam section						
Top width (m)	1.5	1.5	2.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
Slope of d/s face	1:3	1:3	1:3	1:3	1:3	1:3
Length of floor (m)	10.0	10.0	18.0	10.0	10.0	10.0
Floor thickness (m)	0.5	0.5	0.50	0.5	0.5	0.5

## 6.10 Application of SWAT Model

In the present study, ARC GIS based SWAT model has been applied for Kodar catchment up to Koma G/D site where discharge measurement and sediment sampling were done for the monsoon period of 2010 to 2012. The sensitivity analysis has been carried out to determine sensitive parameters for runoff and sediment modeling. After calibration and validation of model up to Koma G/D site, the model parameters with some modification has been applied on Kodar reservoir catchment for impact assessment analysis.

### 6.10.1 SWAT model up to Koma G/D site

The contour, land use, soil and predefined watersheds and drainage maps have been used for generation of HRUs in SWAT model setup. In the setup, the Kodar catchment up to Koma G/D site has been divided in 10 sub-watersheds and 129 HRUs. The SWAT model setup for river Kodar up to Koma G/D site has been presented in Fig 6.28. The meteorological data including daily rainfall, maximum and minimum temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, sunshine hour etc. have been used for determination of monthly parameters for weather generator in the model. The soil types and land uses present in Kodar catchment have been included in the SWAT model before setting up of model.



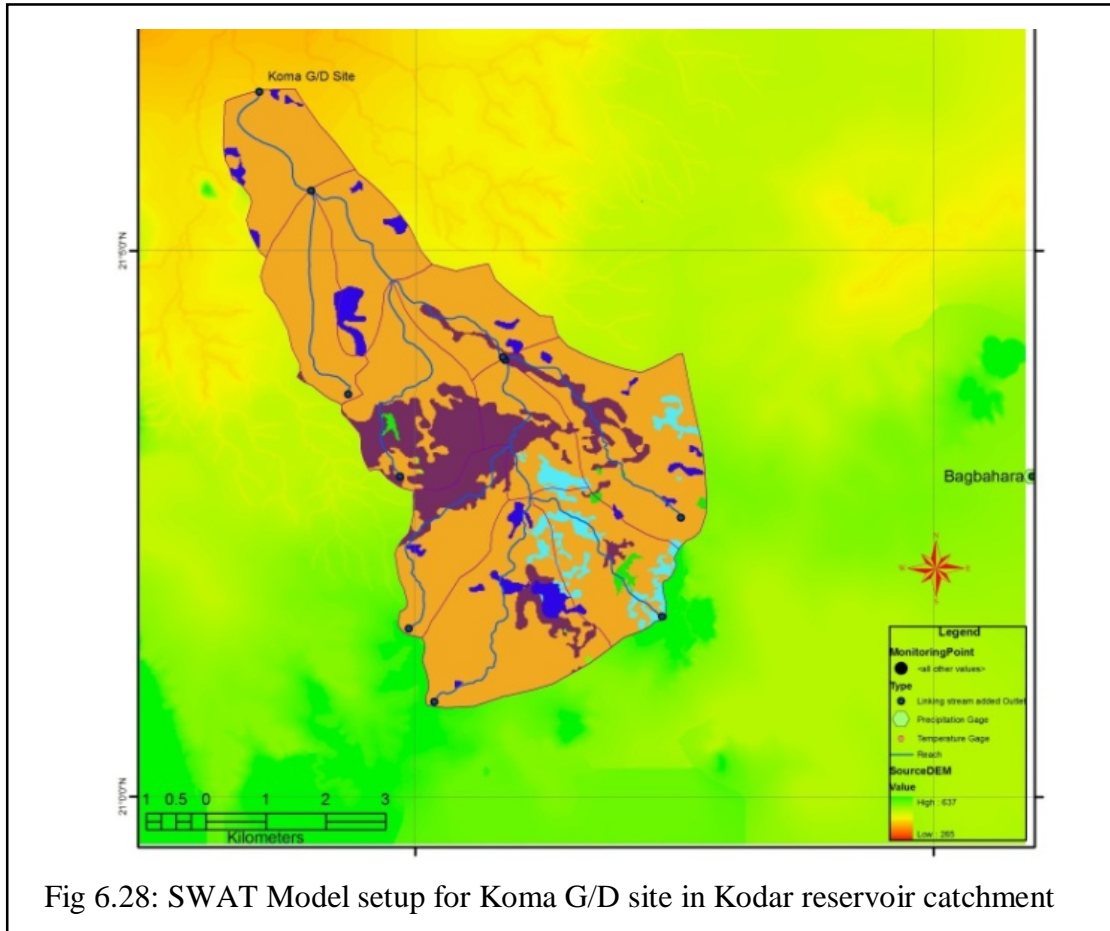


Fig 6.28: SWAT Model setup for Koma G/D site in Kodar reservoir catchment

The monthly statistics of meteorological data of Raipur have been used for weather generator presented in Table 6.30. After setting up of model, the weather generator for the study area was assigned and writing of files using default values were done. The results of sensitivity analysis to limit the parameters, calibration to set parameter values and validation with independent data to judge the model performance are given below.

### 6.10.1.1 Sensitivity analysis

The sensitivity analysis using observed data of runoff and sediment data of year 2010 and 2011 have been done. Initially a simulation run has been conducted using default parameters and saved as a default run. All important parameters affecting runoff and sediment with their lower, upper bound and variation method has been assigned and after writing all input and output files sensitivity run has been conducted. The results of sensitivity analysis provided sensitive parameters and their ranks (Table 6.31). From the analysis of sensitivity simulation, it has been observed that the threshold depth of water in shallow aquifer required for return flow to occur (GWQMN) is very important for runoff, while Manning's N for main channel (CH\_N2) is the most important from sediment concentration point of view. The evaporation compensation factor (ESCO), curve number (CN2), surface runoff lag time (SURLAG), linear parameter for sediment retention (SPCON) and management factor (USLE\_P) etc. are other important parameters which needed to be adjusted during calibration of model.

Table 6.30: Data for Weather generator in SWAT model.

Parameter*	Statistics	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
Rainfall	Mean	2.3	3.8	9.5	3.1	14.40	121.3	292.4	220.3	120.87	27.4	4.39	2.74
	St. Deviation	0.43	0.91	1.14	0.68	1.60	11.68	20.48	16.23	10.72	3.69	0.73	0.43
	Coeff. of skewness	0.00	2.20	1.72	1.56	2.16	3.31	2.88	2.77	3.14	3.39	1.44	0.55
	PR_W1	0.01	0.03	0.03	0.01	0.04	0.20	0.39	0.38	0.27	0.08	0.02	0.02
	PR_W2	0.09	0.00	0.06	0.08	0.13	0.40	0.59	0.61	0.48	0.22	0.06	0.06
	PCPD	0.53	0.79	1.05	0.53	1.89	8.84	16.79	16.26	10.74	3.58	0.95	0.74
	RAINHHMAX	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.020	0.12	0.05	0.23	0.12	0.03	0.00	0.00
Minimum temperature	Mean	10.9	13.3	17.2	21.9	25.5	25.2	23.4	23.3	23.2	20.3	14.5	10.7
	St. Deviation	0.72	2.48	1.33	1.30	0.95	1.20	0.18	0.15	0.19	1.79	1.51	0.56
Maximum Temperature	Mean	26.7	29.4	34.2	38.6	40.8	36.1	30.3	29.1	30.2	30.2	28.5	26.7
	St. Deviation	0.61	5.45	1.65	1.06	0.48	3.31	0.74	0.40	0.51	0.63	0.48	0.38
Relative humidity	Mean	59.9	54.2	43.1	33.2	32.2	56.2	78.1	81.8	78.9	71.3	63.2	60.2
	St. Deviation	1.2	10.6	4.9	2.3	1.5	13.4	3.0	1.1	1.9	3.0	2.0	0.8
Wind speed	Mean	0.31	0.61	0.69	1.13	1.60	2.22	2.02	1.45	0.40	0.41	0.39	0.37
	St. Deviation	0.3	0.7	0.4	0.8	0.5	0.9	0.6	1.0	1.4	0.5	0.2	0.2
Sunshine hour	Mean	7.9	8.7	8.9	9.1	8.3	4.4	2.7	2.9	5.5	7.9	8.2	7.8
	St. Deviation	0.4	1.6	0.3	0.4	0.7	1.6	0.5	0.6	1.5	0.6	0.4	0.5

\* Description and units of parameters- Rainfall in mm, Temperature in degree centigrade, Relative humidity in %, Wind speed in m/sec, PR\_W1 is the probability of a wet day following a dry day, PR\_W2 is the probability of a wet day following a wet day, PCPD is the average number of precipitation days, RAINHHMAX is the maximum 0.5 hour rainfall in mm in the month.

Table 6.31: Results of sensitivity analysis

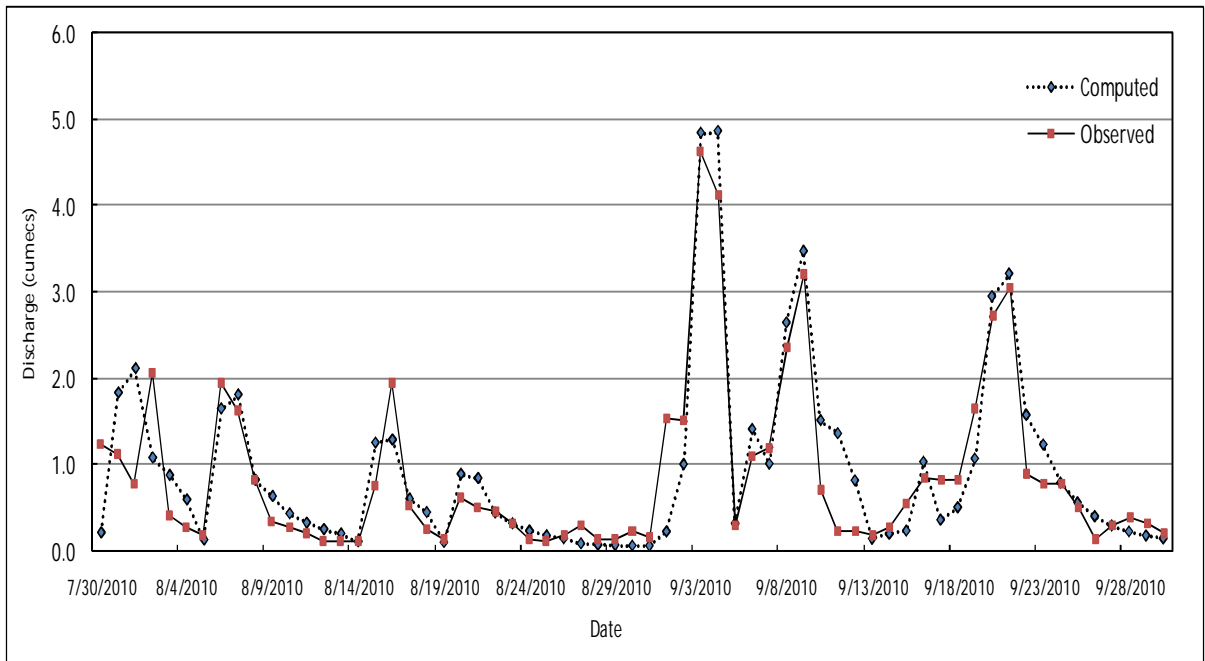
S.N.	Parameter	Description	Rank	Category
Runoff modeling				
1.	GWQMN	Threshold depth of water in shallow aquifer required for return flow to occur	1	Very important
2.	ESCO	Soil Evaporation compensation factor	2	Important
3.	CN2	Initial SCS curve number for AMC II	3	Important
4.	SURLAG	Surface runoff lag time	4	Important
5.	ALPHA_BF	Base flow Alpha factor	5	Important
6.	SOL_AWC	Manning's N value for main channel	6	Important
7.	CH_K2	Effective hydraulic conductivity for main channel	7	Important
8.	GW_DELAY	Ground water delay	8	Slight important
Sediment modeling				
1.	CH_N2	Manning's N value for main channel	1	Very important
2.	SPCON	Linear parameter for sediment retention	2	Important
3.	SURLAG	Surface runoff lag time	3	Important
4.	SPEXE	Exponent parameter for sediment retention	4	Important
5.	CH_COV	Channel erodibility factor	5	Important
6.	USLE_P	Management practice factor for MUSLE model	6	Important

#### 6.10.1.2 Calibration of SWAT model

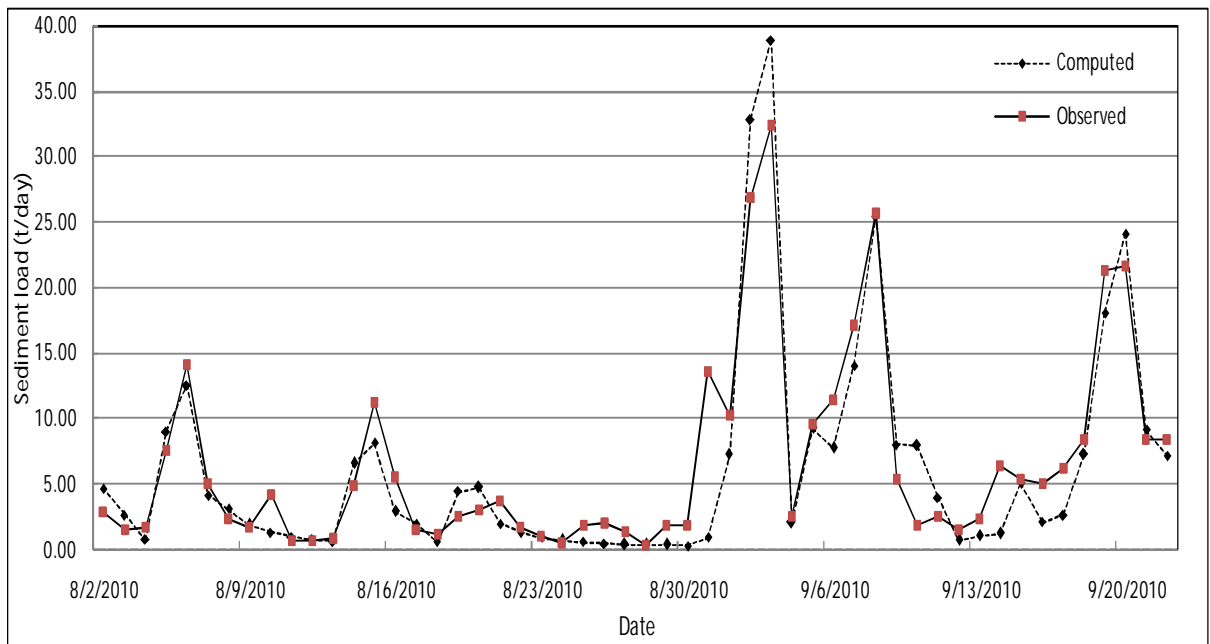
For calibration of SWAT model, the rainfall of Bagbahara RG station, runoff and sediment concentration at Koma GD site for the year 2010 have been used. The model parameter value affecting runoff and sediment were adjusted one by one and after making the changes, rewriting of various files in SWAT model were done. The simulation of model was conducted after rewriting the files and output files were saved in a simulation. The output of the results consisting computed runoff and sediment load were exported to excel files and compared with observed runoff and sediment load using root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral square error (*ISE*), relative error in peak (*REP*), Nash-Sutcliffe efficiency, scatter plot and graphical representation of observed and computed runoff and sediment. The range of various parameters and their final selected values for the model has been presented in Table 6.32. The comparison of observed and computed runoff and sediment load have been presented in Fig 6.29, while scatters plot for the same have in the Fig. 6.30.

Table 6.32: Ranges and final values of SWAT model parameters selected during calibration

S.N.	Parameters	Description	File	Range	Calibrated Value
1	GWQMIN	Threshold depth of water in shallow aquifer required for return flow to occur	.gw	0 to 5000	400
2.	ESCO				
2	CN2	Initial SCS curve number for AMC II	.mgt	35 to 98	Forest – 55 Rice- 65 RNGB-61 Water-92 Urban- 70
4	EPCO	Plant uptake factor	.hru	0 to 1	0.01
5	ALPHA_BF (days)	Base flow Alpha factor 0 to 1	.gw	0 to 1	0.348
6	CH_N2	Manning’s N value for main channel	.rte	0.014	-0.01 to 0.3
7	CH_K2	Effective hydraulic conductivity for main channel	.rte	5	-0.01 to 500
8	GW_DELAY( days)	Ground water delay	.gw	0 to 500	1
9	SPCON	Linear parameter for sediment retention	.bsn	0.0001 to 0.01	0.0012
10	SURLAG	Surface runoff lag time	.bsn	1 to 24	1
11	SPEXE	Exponent parameter for sediment retention	.bsn	1 to 1.5	1
12	CH_COV1	Channel erodibility factor	.rte	-0.05 to 0.6	0.2
13	CH_COV2	Channel Cover Factor	.rte	-.001 to 1	0.9
14	USLE_P	Management practice factor for MUSLE model	.mgt	Forest-0.8 Rice-1.0 Range-1.0 URLD-1.0	0 to 1
15	DEEPEST(mm)	Initial depth of water in deep aquifer	.gw	0 o 5000	1000
16	GW_REVAP	Ground water revap co-efficient	.gw	0.02 to .2	0.02
17	REVAPMN(mm)	Threshold depth of water in shallow aquifer to revap to occur	.gw	0 to 500	500
18	RCHRG_DP (friction)	Deep aquifer percolation friction	.gw	0 to 1	0.1
19	Operation parameters for Rice				
	Year	Operation	OP_Num	Heat Unit	Crop
	1	Irrigation	1	0.15	Rice
	1	Plant/being growing	2	0.15	Rice
	1	Auto Fertilizer	3	0.16	Rice
	1	Harvest & kill	4	0.12	Rice
	1	Irrigation	5	0.15	Rice
20	CH_ERODMO	Monthly erodibility factor	.rte	-	0 to 1

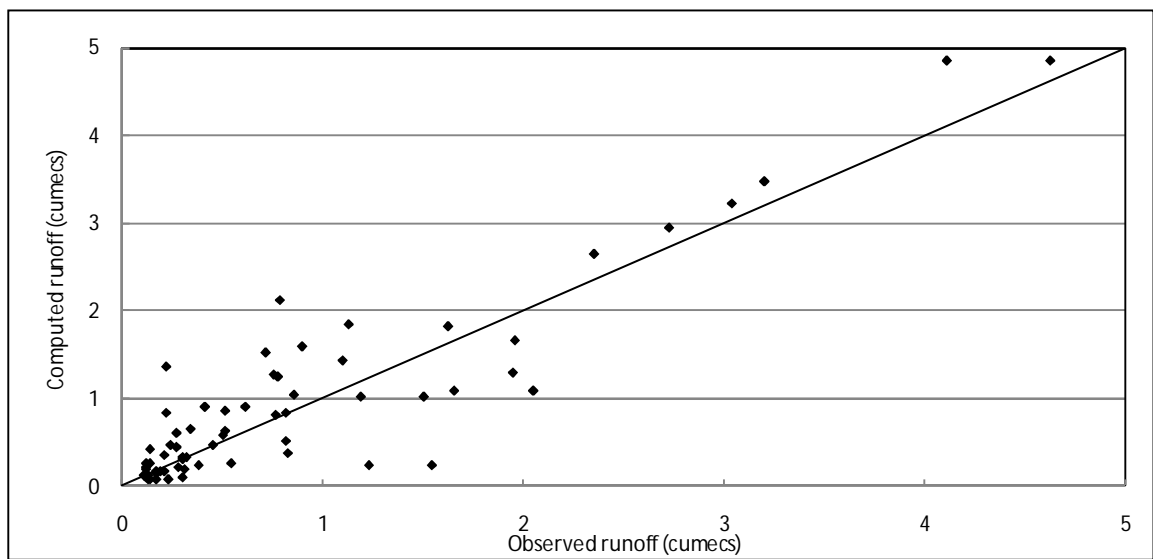


(a) Discharge

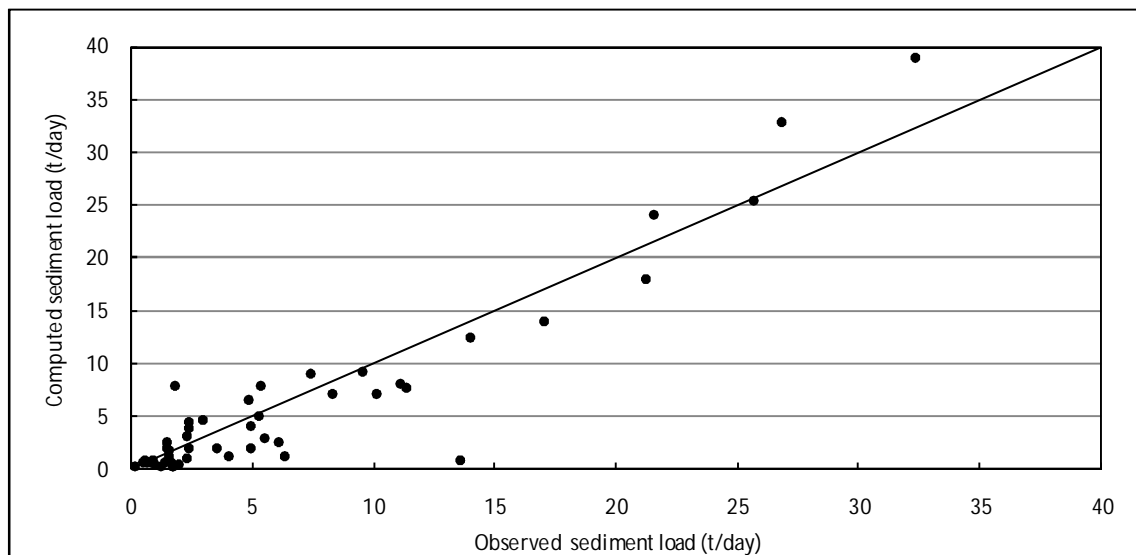


(b) Sediment load

Fig 6.29: Comparison of observed and computed discharge and sediment load at Koma G/D site during calibration.



(a) Runoff



(b) Sediment load

Fig 6.30: Scatter graph between observed and computed discharge and sediment load.

The *RMAE* is a measure indicating how close forecasts or prediction are to be eventual outcomes. The *ISE* is a measure of system performance formed by integrating the square of the system error over a fixed interval of time i.e. smaller the *ISE* closer the match. From the analysis of observed and computed data used in calibration, it has been observed that for runoff, Nash-Suctliff efficiency ( $\eta$ ), root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral squared error (*ISE*), relative error in peak (*REP*) have been computed as 80.46 %, 0.54, 0.064 and -0.053 respectively. Similarly the fitting of the model was tested with observed sediment load and Nash-Suctliff efficiency ( $\eta$ ), root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral squared error (*ISE*), relative error in peak (*REP*) were computed as 91.16 %, 2.55, 0.062 and -0.202 respectively. The *ISE*, *RMAE* and

*REP* values for runoff and sediment load are low that implied a close match between observed and computed events. Also, the Nash-Suctliff efficiency for both the cases are more than 80% and hence the parameters set during the calibration may be considered as acceptable.

### 6.10.1.3 Validation of SWAT model

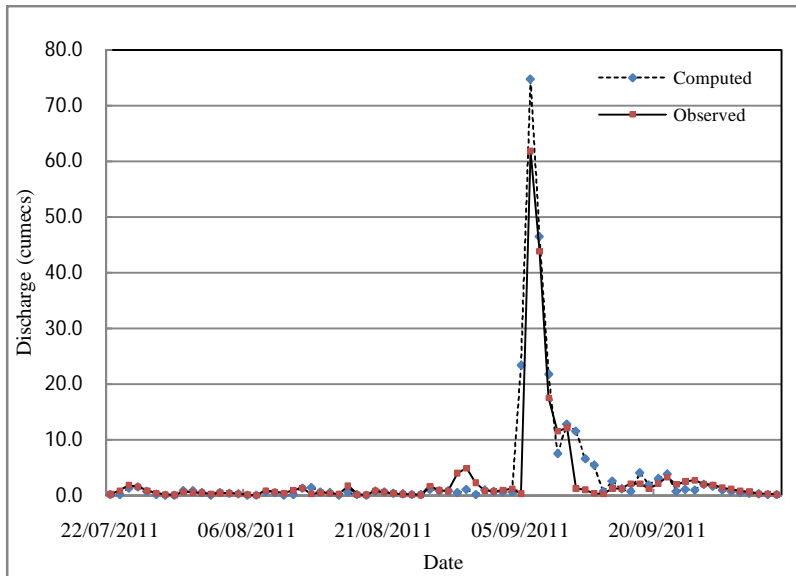
The validation of SWAT model has been carried out using independent data of rainfall, climate, runoff and sediment load for the year 2011 and 2012 with the same parameters used in calibration. The simulation run has been performed using rainfall data of Bagbahara RG station and climatic data of Raipur for the year 2011 and 2012. The simulated runoff and sediment load at Koma G/D site have been exported in excel for computation of various fitness criteria and comparison with observed data. The Nash-Suctliff efficiency ( $\eta$ ), root mean absolute error (*RMAE*), integral squared error (*ISE*), relative error in peak (*REP*) for runoff and sediment load during validation have been computed. The comparison of observed and computed runoff and sediment load during validation has been presented in Fig. 6.31. The graphical representation of computed and observed runoff and sediment indicated reasonably close resemblance. The goodness of fit measures for runoff and sediment during validation has been presented below.

Goodness of fit measure	Year 2011		Year 2012	
	Discharge	Sediment load	Discharge	Sediment load
Nash-Suctliff efficiency ( $\eta$ )	83.65%	70.04%	79.88%	85.71%
Root mean absolute error ( <i>RMAE</i> )	1.18	0.87	0.85	2.34
Integral squared error ( <i>ISE</i> )	0.14	0.08	0.08	0.11
Relative error in peak ( <i>REP</i> )	-0.21	0.10	0.03	0.05

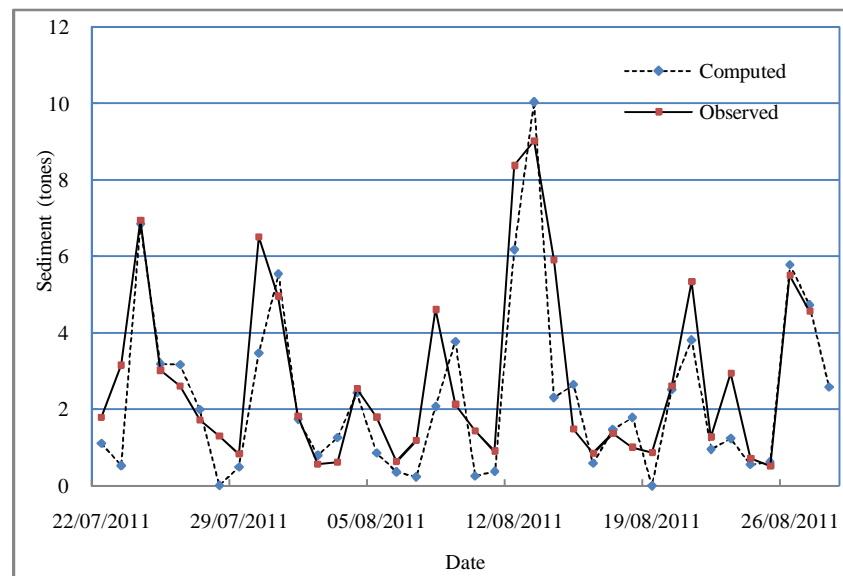
From the analysis of goodness of fit measures and graphical representation of observed and computed values, it has been observed that SWAT model work reasonably satisfactorily in validation and hence it can be used for modeling for other years with calibrated parameters.

### 6.10.2 Application of SWAT model for Kodar reservoir catchment

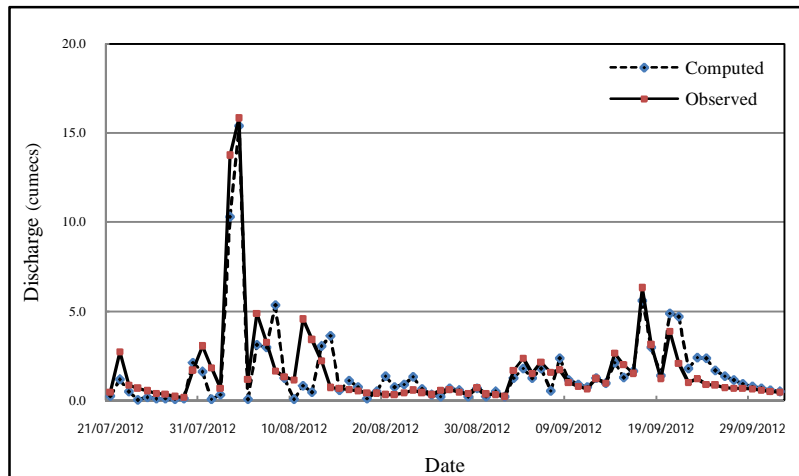
The validation of SWAT model for Koma G/D site indicated that the present setup of model with calibrated parameters works satisfactorily and can be applied on Kodar reservoir catchment suitable modification in the parameters. In setting up of SWAT model for Kodar catchment, the calibrated parameters up to Koma G/D site with suitable changes wherever necessary have been used. The model setup for Kodar catchment has been presented in Fig. 6.32. The weather generator and rainfall data of Kodar, Bartunga and Bagbahara RG stations have been given in the model. Total 1028 HRUs have been created in SWAT model in Kodar reservoir catchment. The model parameters have been edited and rewriting of different files was done for simulation. The simulation run has been made for 2010 and 2011 data and results have been exported to excel files and considered as base line scenario (Pre-BMP) in impact assessment analysis. The Pre-BMP scenario may be considered as the present condition of watershed with generally no or very limited soil conservation measures have been taken place.



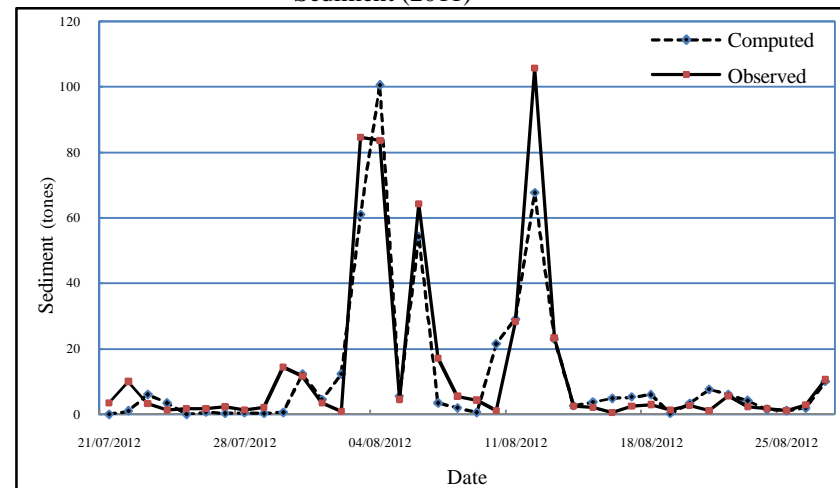
Discharge (2011)



Sediment (2011)



Discharge (2012)



Sediment (2012)

Fig 6.31: Comparison of observed and computed discharge and sediment load at Koma G/D site during validation.



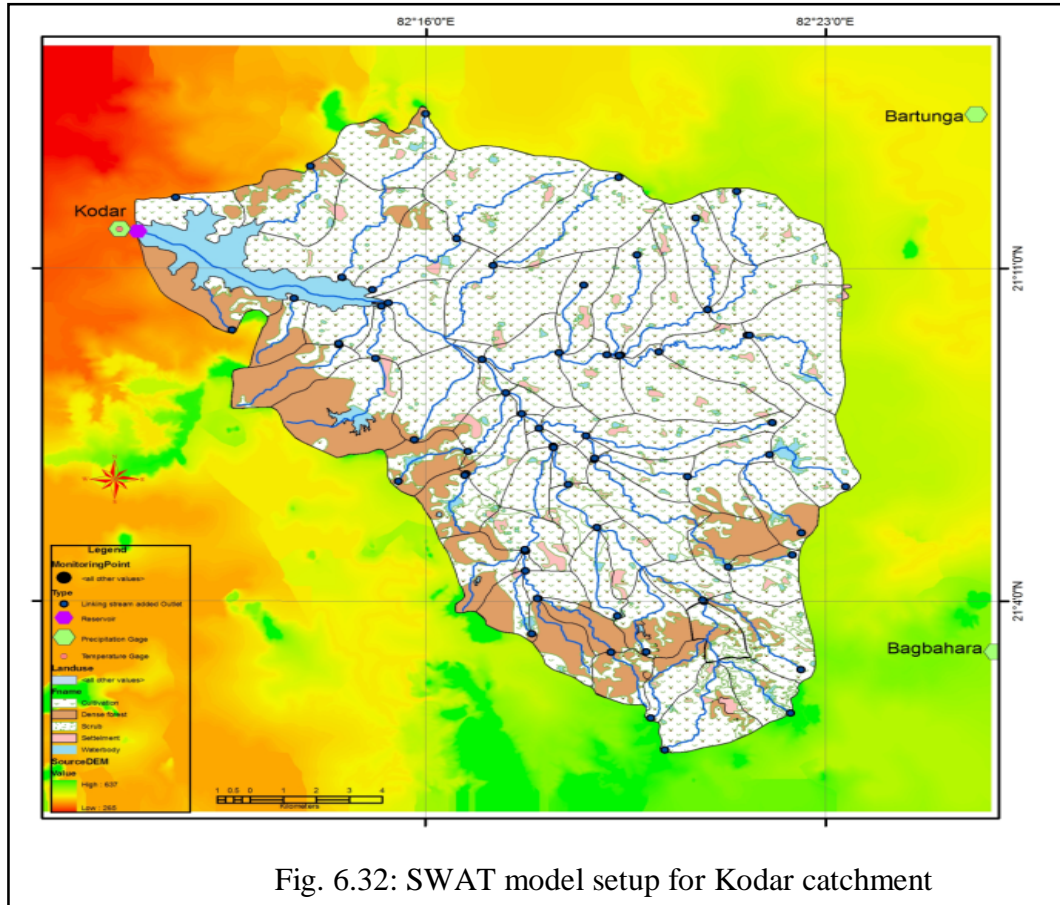


Fig. 6.32: SWAT model setup for Kodar catchment

### 6.11 Impact Assessment Analysis

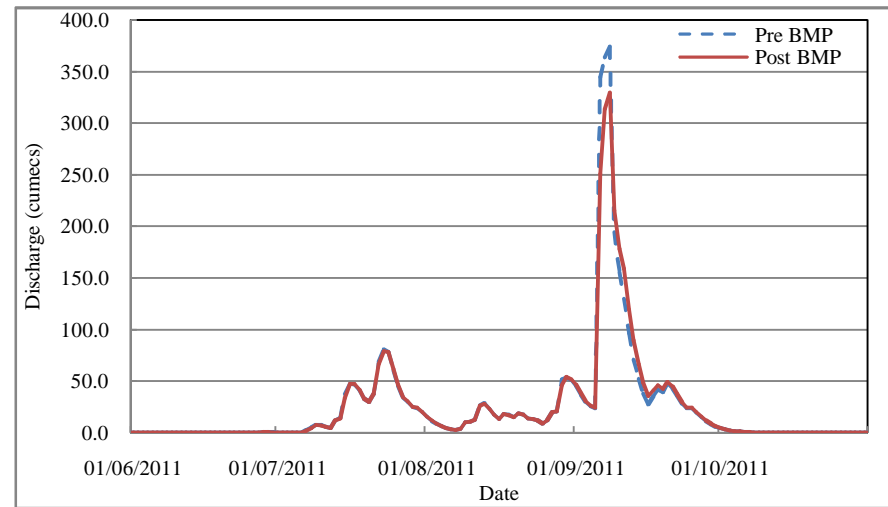
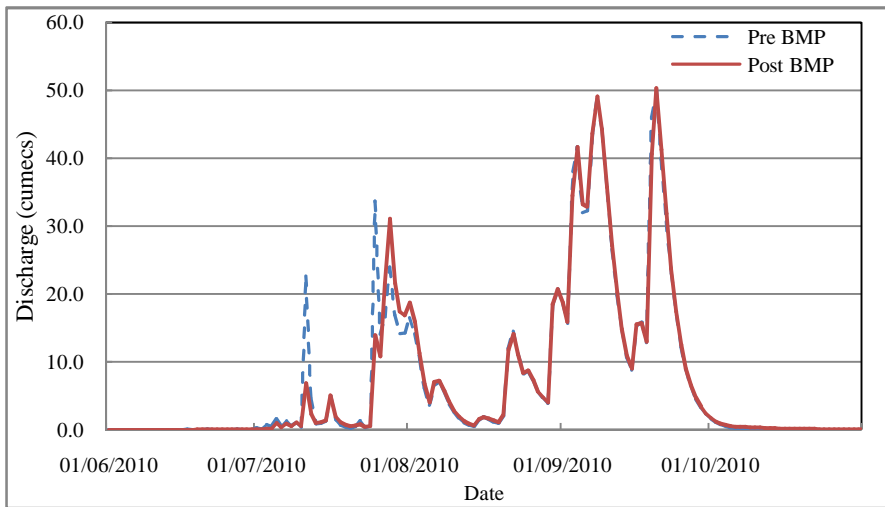
In the study, SWAT model for Kodar reservoir catchment has been set up to analyze the impact of proposed CAT plan on sediment load in the reservoir. In order to assess the impact of best management practices in all suitable areas with the help of agronomic and mechanical conservation measures, two scenarios have been considered in the analysis. In the first scenario, the base line data with no or minimum conservation practices have been considered and this may be called as Pre-BMP scenario. In the second scenario (Post-BMP), the effect of various mechanical, biological and agronomic measures such as gully plug, terraces, stream bank stabilization, conservation structures, afforestation etc applied in different sub-watersheds have been assessed by changing parameters in different files of SWAT model. The values of different parameters for Pre-BMP and Post-BMP scenarios have been presented in Table 6.32. All the modified files after making necessary changes were rewritten and simulation run were made.

The outputs of Pre-BMP and Post-BMP have been exported to excel and compared to assess the effect of conservation measures. The graphical representation of runoff and sediment concentration for the year 2010 and 2011 for catchment up to Koma G/D site and Kodar catchment in the has been presented in Fig. 6.33 (a) & 6.33 (b) respectively. From the analysis of results, it has been observed that the soil conservation measures and best management practices suggested in Kodar reservoir catchment although produce little impact on runoff but able to reduce sediment load significantly. The monthly rainfall and rate of sediment in monsoon month of year 2010 and 2011 at Koma G/D site and Kodar reservoir catchment have been computed and presented in Fig 6.34.

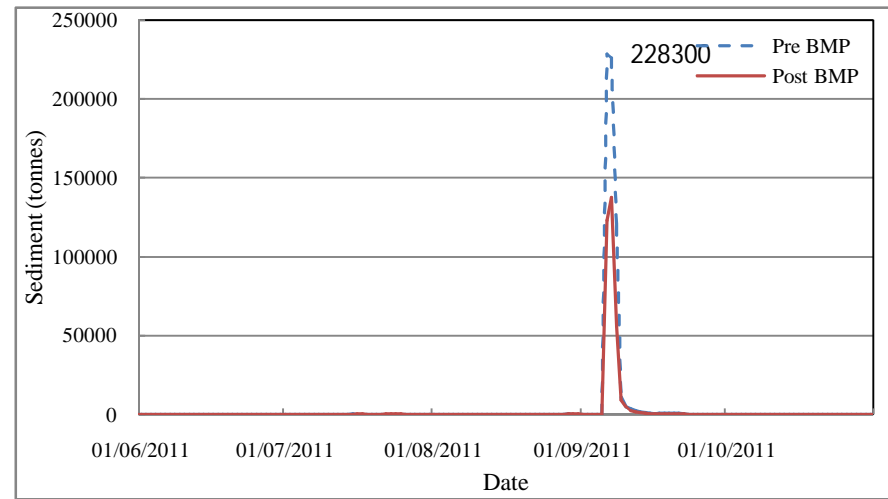
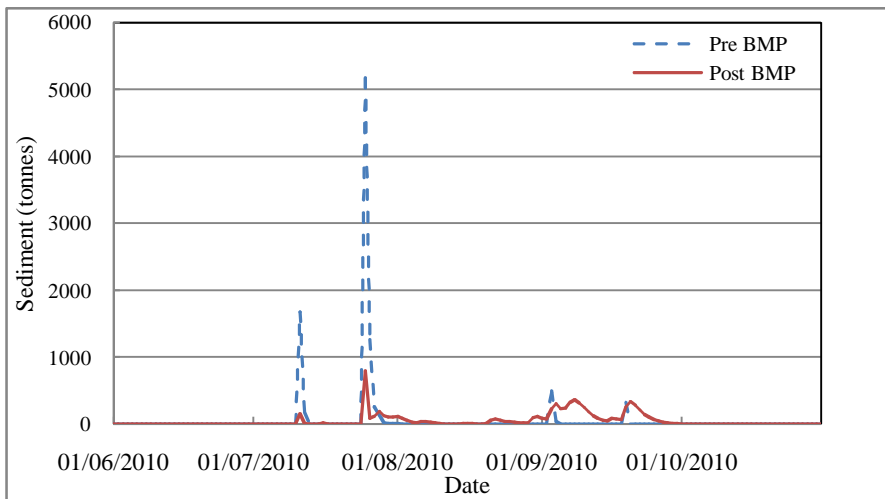
Table 6.33: Parameters with their values in Pre-BMP and Post-BMP scenarios for Kodar basin.

S.N.	Parameters	Description	File	Pre-BMP	Post-BMP
1.	CH_COV1	Channel erodibility factor	.rte	0.09	0.05
2.	CH_COV2	Channel cover factor	.rte	0.45	0.90
3.	CH_EROD	Monthly erodibility factor	.rte	Different values for different months	Reduced by 50%
4.	CH_N1	Manning's N value for tributary channel	.sub	0.09	0.15
5.	CH_K1	Effective hydraulic conductivity	.sub	250	300
6.	CN2	Curve number of SCS model	.mgt	Agriculture-65 Forest-55 Scrub-61 Urban-70	Agriculture-60 Forest-50 Scrub-56 Urban-65
7.	P factor	P-factor of USLE model	.mgt	Agriculture-1.0 Forest-0.80 Scrub-1.0 Urban-1.0	Agriculture-0.80 Forest-0.70 Scrub-0.75 Urban-0.90

The results indicated that maximum sediment load found in the month of Sept 2011 which was 2.97 t/ha under monthly rainfall of 743 mm for Kodar reservoir catchment. If suitable soil conservation measures and BMP applied in the catchment, the sediment entry in the reservoir can be reduced to 1.63 t/ha under same rainfall condition. The sediment rate is more in Koma G/D catchment may be due to hilly region and less plain areas for deposition. The rate of sediment concentration depends mainly on rainfall amount, crop cover and soil condition etc. The BMP and CAT plan have little impact on runoff pattern from the catchments of Koma and Kodar reservoir, but able to reduce significantly the sediment transported through channels which otherwise deposited in Kodar reservoir if no measures were taken.

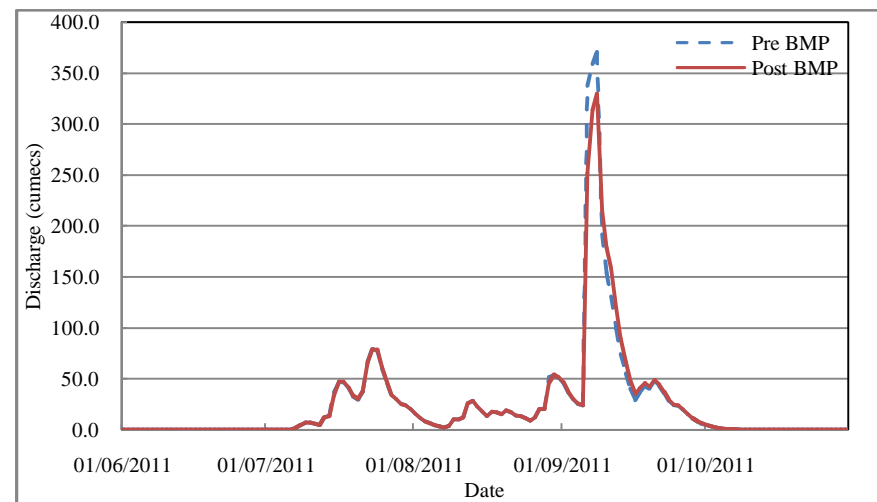
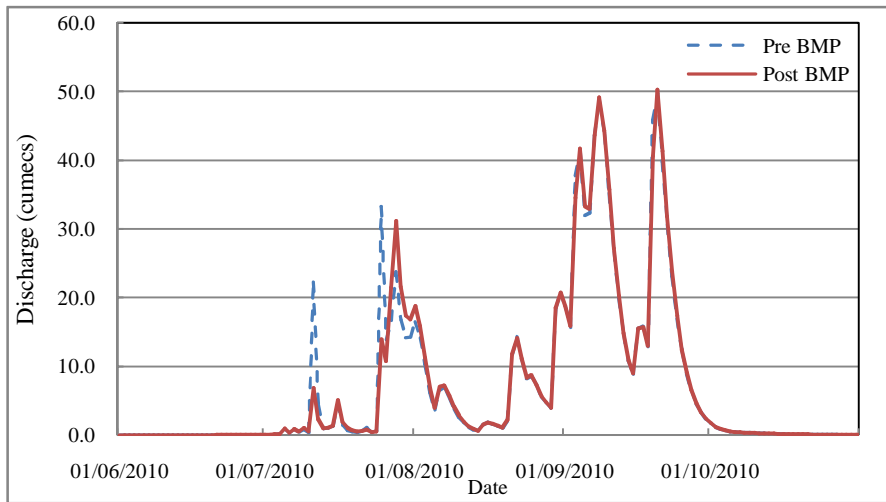


Comparison of Runoff

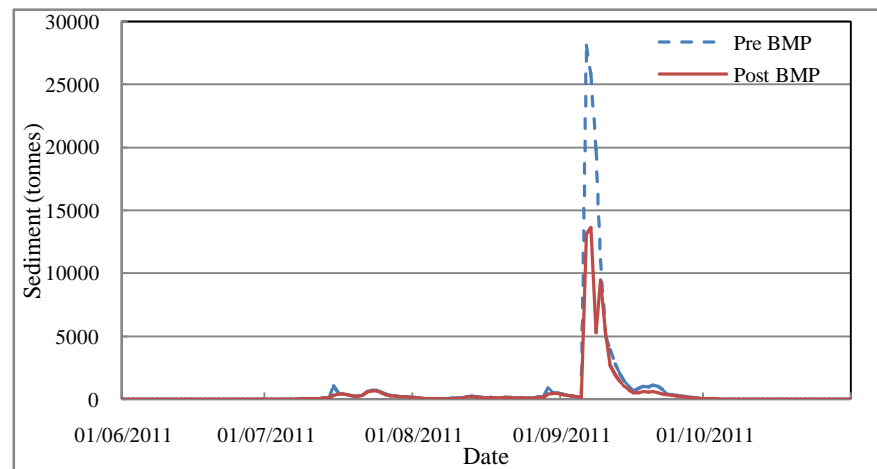
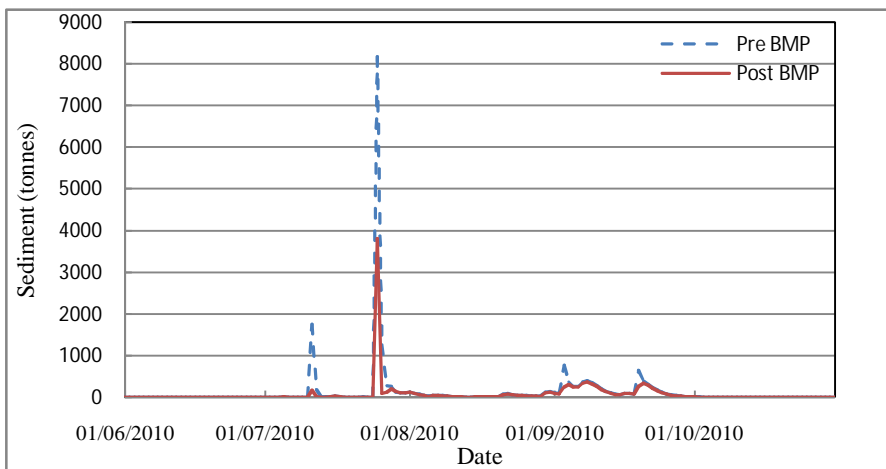


Comparison of sediment

Fig.6.33 (a): Impact of soil and water conservation measures on runoff and sediment yield (Pre BMP and Post BMP) up to Koma G/D site

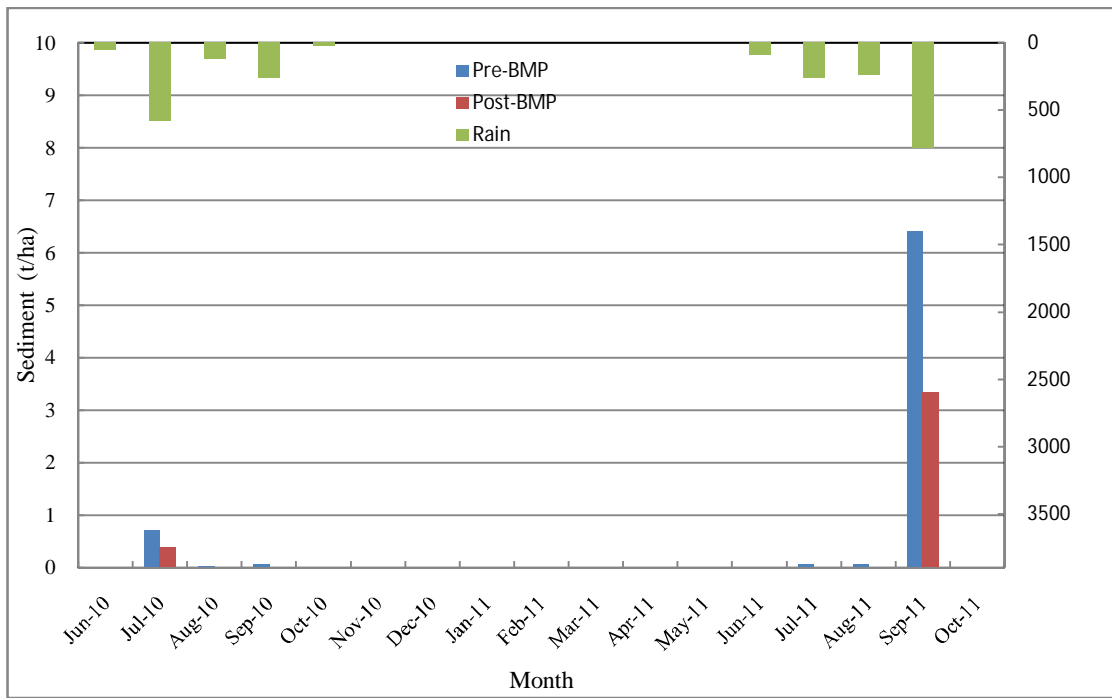


Comparison of Runoff

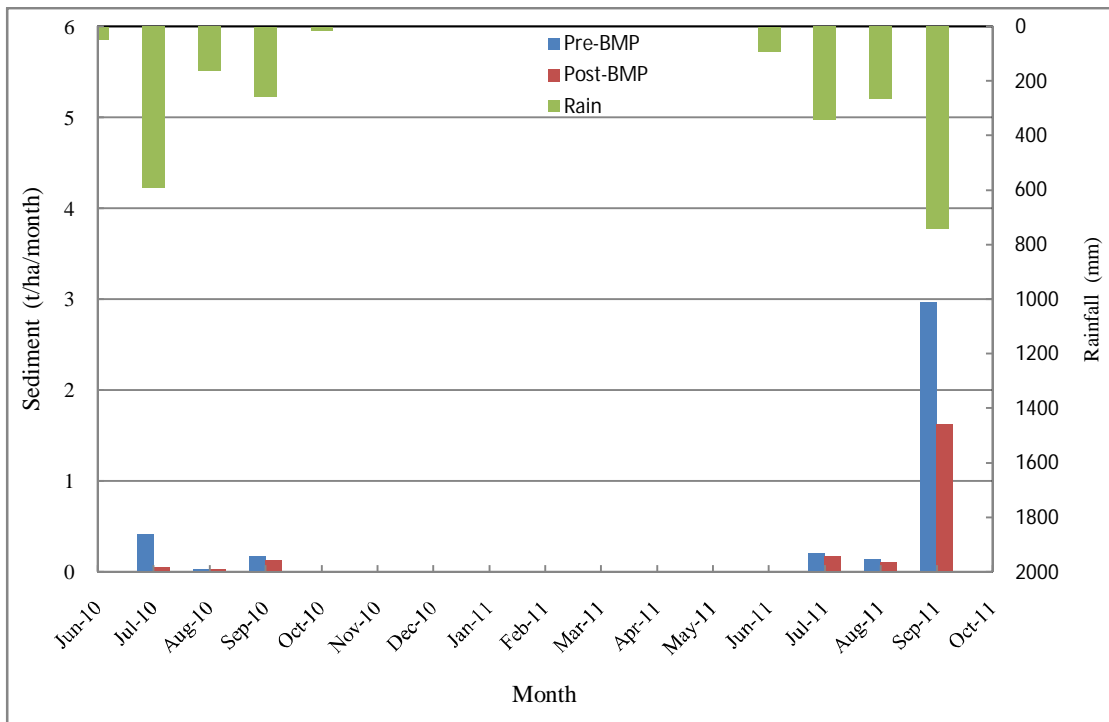


Comparison of Sediment

Fig. 6.33 (b): Impact of soil and water conservation measures on runoff and sediment yield (Pre BMP and Post BMP) for Kodar catchment



Monthly sediment load from Koma G/D site



Monthly sediment load from Kodar reservoir catchment

Fig. 6.34: Bar chart showing monthly sediment load in t/ha/month from Koma G/D site and Kodar reservoir catchment (Pre & Post-BMP)

## CHAPTER 7.0- CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATION

The PDS under HP II has been undertaken to address reservoir sedimentation and soil erosion, development of integrated catchment area treatment plan with agronomic, biological and mechanical measures and development of model for measurement of sediment concentration. The soil erosion and sediment transport is spatial phenomena varies with space and time require inputs that vary with space and therefore a GIS database of study area has been developed which will be useful for further monitoring and implementation of conservation measures. The GIS base for the study consist of preparation and generation of various thematic maps including catchment and sub-watershed map, drainage, soil, geology, geomorphology, contour, DEM, villages etc. The Kodar dam has been constructed on river Kurar near Kowajhar village in Mahasamund district. The river Kurar is the fifth order stream as per Strahler's classification system. More than 96 of area in Kodar reservoir catchment is covered by granite and groundwater availability in these rocks are confined with faults and lineaments only. The piedmont slope and pediplane are the main geomorphological features found in the catchment which are susceptible higher rate of erosion. The soils in the study area are slightly deep to deep, well drained loamy soil and mixed loamy soil subjected to moderate to severe erosion. The elevation ranges from 280 m to 570 m. The general topography of the area consists of undulating plains, hilly track and localized valleys

### 7.1 Conclusions

Various meteorological and hydrological data for the PDS have been collected and runoff data and sediment samples at Koma G/D site were monitored. The thiesen polygon of the study area suggested that Kodar, Bagbahara and Bartunga RG stations have impact on Kodar reservoir catchment and weights of these stations were computed as 0.50, 0.42 and 0.08 respectively. The rainfall in the study area concentrated mainly in the month of July, August and September. The mean monthly maximum temperature in the study area varies from 44.2 °C in the month of May to 24.1 °C in January. Similarly, mean monthly minimum temperature ranges from 8.4 °C in the month of January to 28.6 °C in the month of June.

The assessment of revised capacity and distribution of sedimentation in the reservoir are important aspects for proper reservoir operation and to know the environmental status of necessity of CAT plan in the catchment. Eight LISS III images of different dates covering the whole range of live storage in Kodar reservoir have been used in the analysis. For estimation of revised capacities at different levels of Kodar reservoir, *NDWI*, *NDVI* and band ratio (*BR*) followed by slicing methods of image classification has been used to differentiate the water pixels from other land uses. The revised capacities between the levels and cumulative revised capacities at different levels have been computed and compared with original capacities to estimate the loss in storages. The sedimentation analysis of Kodar reservoir indicated that 24.94 Mm<sup>3</sup> of gross storages and 4.89 Mm<sup>3</sup> of dead storage have been lost in 32 years (1976-77 to 2008-09). Considering the uniform loss in the storages, it can be concluded that 0.78 Mm<sup>3</sup> of gross storage and 0.15 Mm<sup>3</sup> of dead storage of Kodar reservoir have been lost each year with average rate of siltation as 0.25 Mm<sup>3</sup>/100 km<sup>2</sup>/year.

The land use analysis of Kodar reservoir catchment has been carried out with the help of digital image analysis of LISS IV imageries of pre and post monsoon period. The supervised

classification with maximum likelihood technique has been used for classification. The field truth data have been utilized for comparison of results. From the analysis, it may be concluded that the Kodar reservoir catchment is an agriculture watershed covering 80% area under agriculture with mainly paddy crops both in rabi and kharif seasons. Dense forests are found on the ridges and significant numbers of water bodies are available in the catchment to feed the cattles, bathing and other household jobs.

The soil properties including soil texture (percent of silt, clay and sand), soil depth, infiltration capacity and hydraulic conductivity are important parameter for detachment and movement of soil from catchment and modeling. In the present study, detail soil investigation consisting of in-situ soil tests including infiltration test using double ring infiltrometer, saturated hydraulic conductivity test using Guelph permeater, bulk density and dry density using core cutter method and laboratory tests consisting of textural analysis using sieve and pipette analysis and sp. gravity using density bottle have been conducted on eleven sites in Kodar reservoir catchment.

The results of modeling the infiltration process concluded the modified Kostiakov's model can be used for modeling the infiltration process in the Kodar catchment and similar type of soils in the region. The results of hydraulic conductivity indicated that the field saturated hydraulic conductivity in the study area varies between 0.10 cm/hr to 88.95 cm/hr. The particle size analysis is carried out to determine the relative proportion of different grain sizes that make a given soil mass. The texture of soil has been determined using percentages of gravel, sand, silt and clay in soil triangle. The soils in the study area are mainly silt loamy and sandy loams which are prone to erosion and conservation measures are necessary to reduce displacement of soils. The sp. gravity of soils in the region ranges from 2.21 to 2.59.

The Saaty's AHP has been used as decision support technique with nine different EHPs including soil loss from USLE/RUSLE model ( $SL$ ), sediment production rate ( $SPR$ ), sediment yield ( $SY$ ), sediment transport index or sediment power index ( $STI$  or  $SPI$ ), slope ( $SLP$ ), drainage density ( $D_d$ ), channel frequency ( $C_f$ ), form factor ( $R_f$ ) and circulatory ratio ( $R_c$ ) for prioritization work. For prioritization purposes, the whole Kodar catchment has been divided into sixty seven sub-watersheds with area ranging from 0.05 sq. km. to 13.05 sq. km.

Various maps representing spatial distribution of different factors R, K, L, S, C & P have been generated in ILWIS GIS with the help of contours, point elevation, land use map, soil map, rainfall, soil investigation results, remote sensing imageries and other standard information which in turn provided average annual soil loss using USLE and RUSLE models. The results obtained from the analysis indicated that the average annual and seasonal rate of soil loss from the Kodar reservoir catchment is 7.78 t/ha/year and 7.32 t/ha/year respectively using RUSLE model. The soil loss from 72% area is less than 3 t/ha yr and these areas should be taken for agronomic and biological measures of soil conservation. It is recommended that 31.69 sq. km area in different sub-watersheds having soil loss more than 5 t/ha/yr should be considered at initial stage if only soil loss is considered the criteria for soil conservation measures.

The sediment production rate ( $SPR$ ) from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment ranges from 0.13 (ha-m/100 sq km/year) from SW-64 to 5.05 (ha-m/100 sq km/year) from SW-38. For estimation sediment yield from sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment a simple regression model

quoted in literature (Kumar, 1985, Rao & Mahabaleswara, 1990) has been used. From the analysis of sediment yield, it has been observed that minimum sediment yield from sub-watershed SW-27 is  $0.00 \text{ Mm}^3/\text{km}^2/\text{yr}$ , while sub-watershed SW-32 produces maximum sediment yield which is  $0.244 \text{ Mm}^3/\text{km}^2/\text{yr}$  which is maximum among all the sub-watersheds in Kodar catchment. The STI used in the priority analysis varies from 0.01 (Sw-13) to 22.82 (SW-44) indicated wide variation in transport characteristics. The average slope in the sub-watersheds of Kodar catchment ranges from 0.00 % in SW-27 to 11.63 % in SW-44.

The value of principal eigen value ( $\lambda_{\max}$ ) and consistency index (*CI*) in Saaty's AHP analysis have been estimated as 10.08 and 0.135 respectively. The consistency ratio for the present decisions has been computed as 9.3 %, which is less than 10 which implies that the decisions regarding comparative importance between the EHPs are acceptable. The soil loss (*SL*) has maximum weight as 0.33, while circulatory ratio (*R<sub>c</sub>*) with weight of 0.02 exhibits the least importance in prioritization decision and in absence of other data soil loss can be used the criteria for prioritization. The AHP analysis suggested that more than 21 sub-watersheds covering 117 sq. km area of Kodar reservoir catchment falls under very high and high priority and a scientifically developed CAT plan consisting mechanical, biological and agronomic measures should be implemented immediately in these sub-watersheds. The results of analysis indicated that the sub-watersheds under very high and high priority are either on higher slope from where soil erosion are more or near the reservoir from where eroded material easily transported to the reservoir through dense network of drainage.

For development of CAT plan for environmentally stressed areas in Kodar reservoir various thematic layers such as geology, land use, soil, slope, drainage, geomorphology have been used for selection of soil and water conservation measures in sub-watersheds of Kodar reservoir catchments. It may be concluded that nearly 41 sq. km area in Kodar catchment is suitable for farm ponds. The CAT plan suggests 101.61 ha land can be used for afforestation, 114.86 ha for agro-forestry and 11.41 ha land for development of grazing land which will be beneficial for rural population for their additional income and environmental health of the watershed. The mechanical measure under the CAT Plan of Kodar reservoir catchment includes 37 gully plugs, 22 nala plugs, 21 boulder bunds and 6 check dams. Gram panchayats break up of agronomic, biological and mechanical measures have been provided in the study will be useful for administrative authority to take up these measures systematically. The design of check dams provided in the report will be helpful for implementing agencies for cost estimation and construction.

In the present study, ARC GIS based SWAT model has been applied for Kodar catchment up to Koma G/D site where discharge measurement and sediment sample collection were done for the year 2010 to 2012. The sensitivity analysis has been carried out to identify the important parameters and it may be concluded that the *GWQMN* (threshold depth of water in shallow aquifer required for return flow to occur) and *CH\_N2* (Manning's N value for main channel) are the most important parameters for runoff and sediment modeling respectively. For calibration of SWAT model, the rainfall of Bagbahara RG station, runoff and sediment concentration at Koma GD site for the year 2010 have been used. The Nash-Sutcliffe efficiency ( $\eta$ ) and root mean absolute error (*RMAE*) have been found as 80.46 % and 0.54 for runoff while the same have been computed as 91.16 % and 2.55 for sediment. The results of calibration indicated a reasonably



close match between observed and computed events and using these parameters, validation of model has been carried out using independent data set of year 2011 and 2012. The efficiency of model was found as 83.65% for runoff and 70.04 % for sediment during 2011 and 79.88% and 85.71% during 2012 for runoff and sediment respectively during validation indicated the model with calibrated parameters can be used further for rainfall-runoff –sediment modeling.

The SWAT model parameters with little changes where ever required were made in setting up of model for Kodar basin for impact assessment analysis of proposed CAT plan. The simulation run has been made for 2010 and 2011 data with base line scenario (Pre BMP) and improved scenario (Post BMP) in impact assessment analysis. In the second scenario (Post-BMP), the effect of various mechanical, biological and agronomic measures such as gully plug, terraces, stream bank stabilization, conservation structures, afforestation etc applied in different sub-watersheds have been assessed by changing parameters in different files of SWAT model. From the analysis of results of impact assessment analysis, it may be concluded that the maximum sediment load under Pre-BMP scenario in the month of Sept 2011 which was 2.97 t/ha can be reduced to 1.63 t/ha under same rainfall condition, if suitable measures applied in Kodar catchment. It may be concluded that the BMP and CAT plan have little impact on runoff pattern from the catchments of Koam and Kodar reservoir, but able to reduce significantly the sediment concentration transported through channels and deposited in the Kodar reservoir otherwise.

## **7.2 Feedbacks from Knowledge Dissemination Workshops**

In order to get feedbacks from user departments, stakeholders, technocrats and NGOs etc, two knowledge dissemination workshops have been organized on Dec 09, 2011 and June 28, 2013 at Raipur. These workshops were attended by officers from Water Resources Department, Agriculture Department, Rural Development Department, Government of Chhattisgarh, Indian Meteorological Department, Central Water Commission, Government of India, professors and students from Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishvavidlaya and National Institute of Technology, Raipur, local people and NGOs etc. In the workshops, lectures from Scientists of National Institute of Hydrology, RC Bhopal, National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee, Professor from Indian Institute of Technology, Roorkee have been delivered on different topics of PDSs and other related issues including reservoir sedimentation, watershed management, watershed prioritization and consultancy works. During these workshops, wide spread appreciations from different sectors of audiences have been received. The need of assessment of revised capacities of reservoirs in state using modern technology is strongly felt by engineers of WRD, Chhattisgarh. The present network of sediment monitoring in the state is insufficient, therefore, some more sites on major rivers of should be monitored to know the present state of erosion process in catchments.

The scientific approach applied for prioritization of sub-watersheds and development and design of CAT plan were greatly acknowledged. It has been emphasized that the proposed CAT plan should be implemented by sending the reports to watershed mission, rural development and agriculture departments. The CAT plan should be made available to Gram Panchayats of study area for implementation. A regular interaction of scientists, technocrats and local people through seminars, workshops for development of awareness and monitoring the progress of implementation of CAT plan is required for sustainable development of catchments of reservoirs. The participants stated that the CAT plan for other water resources projects should be developed

for reducing the entry of silt load in reservoirs. It has also been felt that the monitoring of sediment in Kodar catchment should be continued for improvement of model and impact assessment analysis, if CAT plan is implemented. Water Resources Department, Govt. of Chhattisgarh has decided to implement the CAT plan suggested under this study through different rural employment guarantee schemes.

### **7.3 Recommendations**

During the PDS expeditions, deliberation and discussions with technocrats and stakeholders, the following recommendations have been finalized.

- Regular assessment of revised capacities of reservoirs in the state (Bathymetric survey-15 years, RS &GIS-5 years).
- Identification of hot spot and development of CAT plan for project during design stage.
- The soil loss and slope can be considered the most suitable parameters for identification of environmentally stressed areas in the catchment
- Sediment sampling in Kodar catchment should be continued for strengthening of modal and few more sites should be started in other major rivers of state.
- Rural development, Agriculture, Gram Panchayats and other implementing agencies can use site specific recommendation for soil and water conservation structure suggested for Kodar reservoir catchment.
- CAT plan with scientific inputs should be developed and implemented for other water resources projects in the state with close coordination of scientific organizations, local population and implementing agencies.
- Development of rainfall-runoff-sediment model for impact assessment of applied CAT plan/environment degradation
- Replication of study in other water resources project
- Dissemination of knowledge through various means and development of awareness in rural population.
- Involvement of stakeholders in spreading the message of soil and water conservation and awareness of application of agronomic measures in agriculture fields.

## CHAPTER 10.0 – BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Abrahart RJ, White SM (2001) Modelling sediment transfer in Malawi: comparing backpropagation neural network solutions against a multiple linear regression benchmark using small data sets-Physics and Chemistry of the Earth, Part B: Hydrology. Oceans and Atmosphere 26: 19-24
- Adinarayana J, Rao KG, Krishna NR, Venkatachalam P, Suri JK (1999) A rule based soil erosion model for a hilly catchment, Catena, 37: 309-318
- Ahmadi H (2006) Determine of local model of mass soil movement hazards by using quantitative of AHP, Case study Taleghan basin. Iranian J Nat Res 58(1): 3-13
- Amiri F. et al., (2006a) Comparison of measurement methods of utilization of Erocia ceratoide species. J Iranian nat Res Agri Sci
- Amiri F. et al., (2006b) Best selecting of frequency distribution for predict of flash peak quick by using AHP. J Agri Sci, University of Eisefahan press (Iran)
- Aronoff S (1991) Geographic information systems: a management perspective, WDL Publications, Ottawa
- Arnold JG, Fohrer N (2005) SWAT2000: current capabilities and research opportunities in applied watershed modeling. Hydrol Process 19:563–572
- Arnold JG, Srinivasan R, Muttiah RS, Williams JR (1998) Large area hydrologic modeling and assessment, part I: Model development. J Am Water Resour Assoc 34(1):73–89
- Arnold JG, Srinivasan R, Muttiah RS, Allen PM (1999a) Continental scale simulation of the hydrologic balance. J Am Water Resour Assoc 35(5): 1037–1051.
- Arnold JG, Srinivasan R, Ramanarayanan TS, DiLuzio M (1999b) Water resources of the Texas Gulf basin. Water Sci Tech 39(3): 121–133.
- Ascough JC II, Baffaut C, NEARING MA, Flanagan DC (1995) Watershed model channel hydrology and erosion processes. In: Flanagan DC and Nearing MA (ed), USDA-Water Erosion Prediction Project hillslope profile and watershed model documentation, NSERL Report No. 10, USDA-ARS National Soil Erosion Research Laboratory, West Lafayette, Indiana
- Ascough JC II, Baffaut C, NEARING MA, Liu BY (1997) The WEPP watershed model: I. Hydrology and erosion. Trans Am Soc Agric Eng 40(4): 921-933
- Babun SM, Yusuf KW (2001) Modeling soil erosion in tropical environment using remote sensing and geographical information system. Hydrol Sci 46(2): 191-198
- Baffaut C, Nearing MA, Ascough JC, Liu BY (1997) The WEPP watershed model: II- Sensitivity analysis and discretization on small watersheds. Trans Am Soc of Agric Eng 40(4): 935-943
- Bali YP, Karale RL (1977) Sediment yield index as a criterion for choosing priority basins. IAHS-AISH Publication No.122, Paris: 180-188
- Beasley DB, Huggins LF, Monke EJ (1980) ANSWERS: a model for watershed planning. Trans Am Soc of Agric Eng 23(4):938–944
- Behera S, Panda RK (2006) Evaluation of management alternatives for an agricultural watershed in a sub-humid subtropical region using a physical process based model. Agric Ecosyst Environ 113:62–72

- Bhuiabhar BW, Dalvi VD, Gore K P (1989) Distribution of erosion index and iso- erodant map of Vidarbha. *Indian J Soil Cons* 17 (3): 31-38
- Bingner RL (1996) Runoff simulated from Goodwin Creek watershed using SWAT. *Trans Am Soc of Agric Eng* 39(1): 85–90
- Bingner RL, Garbrecht J, Arnold JG, Srinivasan R. (1997). Effect of watershed subdivision on simulation runoff and fine sediment yield. *Trans Am Soc of Agric Eng* 40(5): 1329–1335.
- Boellstorff D, Benito g (2005) Impacts of set-aside policy on the risk of soil erosion in central Spain *Agric Ecosyst Environ* 107: 231–243
- Bundela DS, Singh R, Mishra K (1995) Sediment yield modeling for small watersheds in Barkar river valley. *J Inst of Engrs (I)* 76: 22-25
- Burrough PA, McDonnell RA (1998) *Principles of Geographical Information Systems*. Oxford University Press, New York
- Chinnamani S, Sairam V, Sakthivadivel R (1982) Applicability of the universal soil loss equation in mountain watershed in semi-arid and humid regions, recent developments in the explanation and prediction of erosion and sediment yield. *IAHS Publ. No. 137*
- Choudhary RS, Sharma PD (1998) Erosion hazard assessment and treatment prioritization of Giri river catchment, north western Himalayas. *Indian J Soil Cons.* 26 (1): 6-11
- Chu ST (1978) Infiltration during an unsteady rain. *Water Resour Res* 14(3): 461-466
- Chow VT (1994) *Handbook of Hydrology*. McGraw Hill
- Cho SM, Jennings GD, Stallings C, Devine HA (1995). GIS-based water quality model calibration in the Delaware river basin. *ASAE Microfiche No. 952404*, ASAE, St Joseph, MI.
- D'Ambrosio D, Gregorio S, Gabriele S, Gaudio R (2001) A cellular automated model for soil erosion by water, physics and chemistry of the Earth, Part B: Hydrology, Oceans and Atmosphere. 26: 33-39
- Dejong SM (1994) Application of reflective remote sensing for land degradation studies in a Mediterranean environment. PhD Thesis, *Nederlandse Geografische Studies* 177, Utrecht, the Netherland: 179
- Dhar S, Majumdar A (2006) Cartography application for evaluation of water resources of a watershed in eastern India. *Indian Cartographer*: 130-133
- Dwivedi RS, Kumar AB, Tewari KN (1997) The utility of multi-sensor data for mapping eroded lands. *Int J Rem Sens* 18(11): 2303-2318
- Engel BA, Srinivasan R, Arnold JG, Rewerts C, Brown SJ (1993) Nonpoint source pollution modeling using model integrated with geographical information systems. *Water Sci Technol* 28(3–5):685–690.
- Flanagan DC, Livingston SJ (eds.) (1995) *USDA-Water Erosion Prediction Project (WEPP) version 95.7 user summary*. NSERL Report No. 11, USDA-ARS National Soil Erosion Research Laboratory, West Lafayette, Indiana.
- Flanagan DC, Frankenberg H F Jr, Livingston SJ, Meyer CR (1998) A Windows interface for the WEPP erosion model. *ASAE Paper No. 98-2135*, St. Joseph, Michigan, 14 p.

- Food and Agricultural Organization (1985) Watershed development with special reference to soil and water conservation. Soil Bulletin 44, Rome
- Food and Agricultural Organizations (1987) Soil and water conservation in semi-arid areas. Soil Bulletin 57, Rome
- Fohrer N, Haverkamp S, Eckhardt K, Frede HG (2001) Hydrologic response to land use changes on the catchment scale. *Phys Chem Earth B* 26(7–8): 577–582
- Foster, G.R. (1988) Modeling soil erosion and sediment yield, In: soil Erosion Research Methods, Lal R (ed). ISSS, The Netherlands
- Fu BJ, Zhao WW, Chen LD, Zhang QJ, Lu YH, Gelinck H, Poesen J (2005) Assessment of soil erosion at large watershed scale using RUSLE and GIS: A case study in the Loess plateau of China. *Land Degrad Dev* 16: 73–85
- Fu G, Chen S, McColl DK (2006) Modeling the impacts of no-till practice on soil erosion and sediment yield with RUSLE, SEDD and Arcview GIS. *Soil and Tillage Research* 85: 38-49
- Goel MK, Jain SK (1996) Evaluation of reservoir sedimentation using multi-temporal IRS-1A LISS-II data. *Asian-Pacific Remote Sensing and GIS Journal*, 8(2):39 - 43
- Ghidey F, Alberts EE (1996) Comparison of measured and WEPP predicted runoff and soil loss for Midwest Claypan soil. *Trans ASAE* 39(4):1395–1402
- Haverkamp R, Rendon L, Vachaud G (1987) Infiltration equations and their applicability for predictive use. In: *Infiltration Development and Application*, Fok Yu- SI (ed). Honolulu, Hawaii: 142-152.
- HEC-6 User Manual, US Army Corps of Engineers, Internet resource: <http://www.hec.usace.army.mil/software/legacysoftware/hec6/hec6-download.htm>.
- Hill J, Scutt B (2000) Mapping complex pattern of erosion and sustainability in dry Mediterranean ecosystem. *Int J Rem Sens Environ* 74: 557-569
- Hillel D (1998) *Environmental soil physics*, Academic Press. San Diego, CA.
- Honore G. (1999) *Our land, ourselves- A practical guide to watershed management in India*. Indo-German Bilateral Project, “Watershed Management”, New Delhi, India.
- Horton RE (1945) Erosional development of streams and their drainage basins- Hydrological approach to quantitative morphology. *Bull Geol Soci Am* 56: 275-370
- Horton RE (1932) Drainage basin characteristics. *Trans Am Geophys Un*: 350-361
- Jain MK, Kothiyari UC (2000) Estimation of soil erosion and sediment yield using GIS. *Hydrol Sci J* 45(5): 771-786
- Jain SK, Goel MK (1993) Reservoir sedimentation using digital image processing of IRS-I, LISS-I data, Proc. National Symposium on Remote Sensing Applications for Resource Management with Special Emphasis on N.E. Region, Guwahati (India): 504 - 510
- Jaiswal, RK, Thomas T, Singh S, Galkate RV (2008) Assessment of revised capacity of Kharo reservoir using remote sensing and GIS, Proc. **National Seminar on Conservation and Restoration of Lakes (CAROL-2008)**, Nagpur (India): 551-562
- Joglekar DV (1960) Silting of Reservoir. *J Inst Civil Engrs* 40(8)

- Josh CS, Dash DC (1982) Geomorphic prediction models for sediment production rate and intensive priorities of watersheds in Mayurakshi catchment. Proc. Int Symp on Hydrol Aspects of Mountainous Watersheds, School of Hydrology, UOR Roorkee (india), Nov 4-6 1982 1: 15-23
- Khan MA (1999) Water balance and hydrochemistry of precipitation components in forested ecosystem in the arid zone of Rajasthan, India Hydrol Sci J 44: 149-161
- Khan MA, Gupta VP, Moharanam PC (2001) Watershed prioritization using remote sensing and geographical information system: a case study from Guhiya, India. J Arid Environ 49: 465-475
- Kostiakov AN (1932) On the dynamics of the coefficient of water-percolation in soils and on the necessity for studying it from a dynamic point of view for purposes of amelioration, Trans Cong Inter Soc Soil Sci 6th, Moscow, Part A: 17-21
- Kothiyari UC, Jain MK, Ranga Raju KG (2002) Estimation of temporal variation of sediment yield using GIS. Hydrol Sci J 47(5): 693-706
- Krysanova V, Wechsung F (2000) Soil and water integrated model (SWIM) user manual, version: SWIM-8, [http://www.pikpotsdam.de/~valen/swim\\_manual/swim-chapter1.pdf](http://www.pikpotsdam.de/~valen/swim_manual/swim-chapter1.pdf)
- Kumar S (1985) Reservoir sedimentation. Proc. Short term course on planning, design & operation of Reservoirs. Patna University, India, 8p
- Lal R (2001) Soil degradation by erosion, Land Degradation & Development, 12: 519-539
- Leprieur C, Kerry YH, Mastorchio S, Meunier JC (2000) Monitoring vegetation cover across semiarid regions: Comparison of remote observations from various scales. Int J Remote Sens 21 (2): 281-300
- Lillesand TM, Kiefer RW (1987) Remote sensing and image interpretation. John Wiley and Sons, New York
- Lin SS (1997) Strategies for management of reservoir sedimentation, Virginia Dam Safety Program, Richmond, Virginia
- Lindley MR, Barfield BJ, Wilson BN (1995) Chapter 14- Surface impoundment element model description. WEPP User Summery, NSREL Rport No. 11, USDA-ARSMWA, West Lafayette
- Lu D, Li G, Valladares GS, Batistella M (2004) Mapping soil erosion risk in Rondonia, Brazilian Amazonia: using RULSE, remote sensing and GIS. Land Degrad Dev 15: 499-512
- Managond MK, Alasingrachar MA, Srinivas MG (1985) Storage analysis of Malaprabha reservoir using remotely sensed data, Nineteenth International Symposium on Remote Sensing of Environment, Ann Arbor, Michigan: 749-756
- Manguerra HB, Engle BA (1998) Hydrological parameterization of watershed for runoff prediction using SWAT. J Am Water Resour Assoc 34(3):1149-1162
- Martin A, Gunter JT, Regens JL (2003) Estimating erosion in a riverine watershed-Bayou Liberty-Tchefuncta River in Louisiana. Environ Sci Pollut Res 10: 245-250
- Memarini A, Kishore N, Naziri K (1992) How to make decision in conflicting environments; analytical hierarchy process. Udyog Pragati 32-35
- Meimariani E (1996) AHP modern technique for group decision, Manage Sci 32: 22-28

- Mein RG, Larson CL (1973) Modeling infiltration during a steady rain. *Water Resour Res*, 9(2): 384-394
- Miller VC (1953) Automated detection of drainage network from digital elevation models, *Auto Carto. Proc. Sixth International Symposium on Automated Cartography*, Ottawa 1983: 288-291
- Millward AA, Mersy JE (1999) Adapting RUSLE to model soil erosion potential in a mountainous tropical watershed. *Catena* 38(2): 109-129
- Millward AA, Mersey JE (2001) Conservation strategies for effective land management of protected Areas Using Erosion Prediction Information System. *J Environ Manage* 61: 61-80
- Mishra N, Satyanarayan T, Mukherjee RK (1984) Effect of topo elements on the sediment production rate from sub watersheds in upper Damodar valley. *Indian J Agri Engg* 21(3): 65-70
- Mishra N, Satyanarayan T (1991), 'A new approach to predict sediment yield form small ungauged watersheds', *J Inst Engrs (I)* 73: 30-36
- Moore ID, Grayson RB, Ladson AR (1994) Digital terrain modeling. In: Beven, KJ, Moore, ID (eds). *A review of hydrological, geomorphological and biological application*, Chichester: John Wiley & Sons 7-31
- Morgan, RPC, Morgan, DDV, Finney HJ (1984) A predictive model for the assessment of erosion risk, *J Agric Eng Res* 30: 245-253
- Musgrave GW (1947) The quantitative evaluation of factors in water erosion: A First approximation. *J Soil and Water Conserv* 2(3): 133-138.
- Mutreja KN (1986) *Applied hydrology*. Tata McGraw Hills Publication Company, New Delhi
- Naeth MA, Chanasyk DS, Bailey AW (1991) Applicability of the Kostiakov equation to mixed prairie and fescue grasslands of Alberta. *J Range Manage* 44 (1): 18-21
- National Institute of Hydrology (1990-91) *Geomorphological characteristics of western ghats, part-II: Ghatprabha & Malprabha basins (CS-13)*, NIH Roorkee (India): 12-18
- National Institute of Hydrology (1988) *Geomorphological characteristics of western ghats, part-I: Upper Krishna basin (TR-63)*. NIH Roorkee (India).
- Narayana D, Ram Babu VV (1983) Estimation of soil erosion in India. *J Irrig Drain Div ASCE* 109(4): 419-434
- Narain P, Ram Babu, VV, Rao RM, Sehgal JL, Datta RK, Sarkar D, Thampi C J (1993) Soil erosion map of West Bengal. *Indian J Soil Cons* 21(2): 6-10
- Nearing MA, Page DI, Simanton JR, Lane LJ (1989) Determining erodibility parameters from rangeland field data for a process-based erosion model. *Trans Am Soc Agric Eng* 32(3): 919-924
- Neitsch SL, Arnold JG, Kiniry JR, Williams JR (2001) *Soil and water assessment tool, theoretical documentation*. Soil and Water Research Laboratory, Agricultural Research Service, Grassland, 808 East Blackland Road, Temple, TX, USA
- Neitsch SL, Arnold JG, Kiniry JR, Williams JR, King KW (2002) *Soil and water assessment tool, Theoretical documentation, Version 2000*. Texas Water Resources Institute, TWRI Report TR-191

- Nema JP, Verma B, Patel AP (1978) Predicting universal soil loss parameters. *Indian J Soil Cons* 6(2): 75-79
- Nicks AD, Lane LJ, Gander GA (1995) Chapter 2- Weather generator. In: Flanagan DC, Nearing MA (eds), *USDA-Water Erosion Prediction Project hillslope profile and watershed model documentation*. NSERL Report No. 10, USDA-ARS Nat Soil Erosion Res Lab, West Lafayette, Indiana (USA)
- Onyando JO, Kisoyan P, Chemelil MC (2005) Estimation of potential soil erosion for river Perkerra catchment in Kenya. *Water Resour Manage* 19:133–143
- Onstad CA (1984) Depression storage on tilled soil surfaces. *Trans Am Soc Agric Eng* 27(3): 729-732
- Oram B (2005) Hydrological cycle, watershed assessment, education, training, monitoring resources in northeastern Pennsylvania, Wilkes University, Environ Eng Earth Sci Depart Wilkes-Barre, <http://www.water-research.net/watershed/> hydrological cycle.htm.
- Pandey A, Chowdary VM, Mal BC (2007). Identification of critical erosion prone areas in the small agricultural watershed using USLE, GIS and remote sensing. *J Water Resour Manage* 21: 729-746.
- Peterson JR, Hamlett JM (1998) Hydrological calibration of SWAT model in a watershed containing Fragipan soils. *J Am Water Resour Assoc* 34(5):531–544
- Philip JR (1957a) The theory of infiltration: 1- The infiltration equation and its solution. *Soil Sci* 83: 345–357
- Philip JR (1957b) The theory of infiltration: 4. Sorptivity and algebraic infiltration equations. *Soil Sci* 84: 257-264
- Philip JR (1957c) The theory of infiltration: 5. The influence of initial water content. *Soil Sci* 84: 329-339
- Pikounis M, Varanou E, Baltas E, Dassaklis A, Mimikou M (2003) Application of the SWAT model in the Pinios river basin under different land-use scenarios. *Global Nest: Int J* 5(2): 71-79
- Prasad SN, Singh R (1994) Soil erosion and its control in semi-arid region of south-eastern Rajasthan. *Indian J Soil Cons* 22 (1 & 2):102-111
- Ram Babu, Tejwani KG, Agarwal M C, Bhushan LS (1978) Distribution of erosion index and iso-erodant map of India. *Indian J Soil Cons* 6 (1): 1-12
- Raghuwanshi NS, Bhatia KKS (1987) Study of soil erosion for different land use and vegetal covers using universal soil loss equation. National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee (India), TR-28
- Rao HSS, Mahabaleswara H (1990) Prediction of rate of sedimentation of Tungabhadra reservoir. *Proc Sym Erosion, Sedimentation & Resource Conservation, Dehradun, India*: 12-20
- Rao SVN, Rao MV and Gupa PK (1996) A study of sediment yield from Chenab river system in western Himalayas. National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee (India), CS(AR)-197
- Rawls WJ, Ahuja LR, Brakensiek DL and Shirmohammadi A (1993) Infiltration and soil water movement, *Handbook of Hydrology*, McGraw-Hill, Inc
- Renard KG, Foster GR, Weesies GA, Porter JP (1991) RUSLE: Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation. *J Soil and Water Cons* 46(1): 30-33



- Renard KG, Foster GR, Weesies GA, McCool DK, Yoder DC, (1997), Predicting soil erosion by water: A guide to conservation planning with revised universal soil loss equation (RUSLE). Agriculture Handbook No. 703, USDA, Washington DC
- Rosenthal WD, Srinivasan R, Arnold JG (1995). Alternative river management using a linked GIS–hydrology model. *Trans Am Soc Agric Eng* 38(3): 783–790
- Saaty TL (2000) Decision making for leaders. RWS Publications, Pittsburgh: 322
- Saleh A, Arnold JG, Gassman PW, Hauck LM, Rosenthal WD, Williams JR, McFarland AMS (2000) Application of SWAT for the Upper North Bosque river watershed. *Trans Am Soc Agric Eng* 43(5):1077–1087
- Santhi C, Arnold JG, Williams JR, Dugas WA, Srinivasan R, Hauck LM (2001) Validation of the SWAT model on a large river basin with point a non point sources. *J Am Water Resour Assoc* 37(5):1169–1170
- Santhi C, Srinivasan R, Arnold JG, Williams JR (2006) A modeling approach to evaluate the impacts of water quality management plans implemented in a watershed in Texas. *Environ Model Softw* 21:1141–1157
- Schwab GO, Fangmeier DD, Elliot WJ, Frevert RK (1993) Soil and Water conservation Engineering, 4th Edition. John wiley & Sons, Inc., NY
- Shangle AK (1991) Reservoir sedimentation status in India, *Jalvigyan Sameeksha* 1 & 2, INCOH, NIH, Roorkee (india)
- Sharma CK (1981) Landslide and soil erosion in Nepal 2nd ed. Navana Printing Works Private Ltd Calcutta (india)
- Sharma JC, Prasad J, Saha SK, Pande LM (2001) Watershed prioritization based on sediment yield index in eastern part of Doon valley using RS and GIS. *Indian J Soil Cons* 29 (1): 7-13
- Shen DY, Ma AN, Lin H, Nie XH, Mao SJ, Zhang B, Shi JJ (2003) A New approach for simulating water erosion on hill slopes, *Int J Remote Sens* 24: 2819-2835
- Shin-Min C, Ting-Kuei T, Stephan JN (2002) Hydrologic regionalization of watersheds I: Methodology development. *J Water Resour Plan Manage* 128(1):3
- Shrestha RK, Janaki RR, Alavalapati, Robert SK (2004) Exploring the potential for silvipasture adoption in south-central Florida: an application of SWOT-AHP method. [www.elsevier.com/locate/agsy](http://www.elsevier.com/locate/agsy) *Agri Sys* 81: 185-199
- Sidhu GS, Das TH, Singh RS, Sharma RK, Ravishankar T (1998). Remote sensing and GIS techniques for prioritization of watershed: a case study in upper Mackkund watershed, Andhra Pradesh, *Indian J Soil Cons* 2 (3): 71-75
- Singh, G, Ram Babu, Chandra S (1981). Soil loss prediction research in India, Bulletin No. T-12/D-9, Central Soil and Water Conservation Research & Training Institute, Dehradun.
- Skaggs RW, Khaleel R (1982). Chapter 4: Infiltration. In *Hydrology of small watersheds*. St Joseph, Mich: ASCE
- Srinivasan R, Arnold JG (1994). Integration of a basin scale water quality model with GIS. *Water Resour Bull* 30(3): 453–462.

Srinivasan R, Ramanarayan TS, Arnold JG, Bednarz ST (1998) Large area hydrologic modeling and assessment part II: Model application. *J Am Water Resour Assoc* 34(1):91–101

Stone JJ, Lane LJ, Shirley ED, Hernandez M (1995) Chapter 4. Hillslope surface hydrology'. In: Flanagan DC, Nearing MA (eds.) USDA-water erosion prediction project hill-slope profile and watershed model documentation. NSERL Report No. 10, USDA-ARS National Soil Erosion Research Laboratory, West Lafayette, Indiana

Subramanya, K (2008) *Engineering hydrology* (3rd Ed), Tata McGraw Hills publication company, New Delhi (India)

Suriaprasit M, Shrestha DP (2008) Deriving land use and canopy cover factor from remote sensing and field data in inaccessible mountainous terrain for use in soil erosion modeling. The International Land Development Department, Phaholyothin Road, Bangkok, Thailand.

Suvit V, Srisrngthong D, Thisayakorn K, Suwanwerakamtorn R, Wongparn S, Rodprom C, Leelitham S, Jittanon W (1988) The reservoir capacity of Ubolratana dam between 173 and 180 meters above mean sea level. *Asian-Pacific Rem Sens J* 19(1): 1-6

Symeonakis E, Drake N (2004) Monitoring desertification and land degradation over sub-Saharan Africa. *Int J Rem Sens* 25(3): 573-592

Tateshi R, Shimazaki Y, Gunin PD (2004) Spectral and temporal linear mixing model for vegetation classification. *Int J Rem Sens* (20): 4203-4218

Thapa GB, Weber KE (1990) *Managing mountain watersheds: The Upper Pokhara Valley, Nepal*. HSD Monograph 22, AIT, Bangkok

Thiruvengadachari S, Subba Rao P, Rao KR (1980) Surface water inventory through satellite sensing. *J Water Res Plan Manage* 106: 493-502

Thomas T, Jaiswal RK, Galkate RV, Singh S (2009) Estimation of revised capacity in Shetrunji reservoir using remote sensing and GIS, *J Indian Water Resour Soc* 29 (3): 8-14

Trimble SW, Crosson P (2000) Measurements and models of soil loss rates response. *Science* (290):1301

Tripathi MP, Panda RK, Raghuwanshi NS (2003) Calibration and validation of SWAT model for predicting runoff and sediment yield of a small watershed in India. *Agric Engg J* 12(1–2): 95–118.

Tripathi MP, Panda RK, Raghuwansi NS, Singh R (2004) Hydrological modeling of a small watershed using generated rainfall in the soil and water assessment tool model *Hydrol Process* 18: 1811–1821

Tyagi PC, Joshi BP (1994) Resources conservation techniques for sustainable crop production in western Himalayan region, *Indian J Soil Cons* 22 (1 & 2): 72-83

USDA-SCS (1972) In *hydrology*. National engineering hand book, Section 4. Chapters 4–10 SCS: Washington, DC

Van Griensven A, Meixner T, Grunwald S, Bishop T, Diluzio M, Srinivasan R (2006) A global sensitivity analysis tool for the parameters of multi-variable catchment models. *J hydrol* 324: 10-23

Varshney RS (1997) Impact of siltation on the useful life of large reservoirs. State of art report of INCOH, No. INCOH/SAR-11/97 NIH, Roorkee (india)

- Veihe A, Rey J, Quinton JN, Strauss P, Sancho FM, Somarriba M (2001) Modeling of event based soil erosion in Costa Rica, Nicaragua and Mexico: evaluation of EUROSEM model. *Catena* 44: 187-203
- Wang G, Gertner GZ, Fang S, Anderson AB (2003) Mapping multiple variables for predicting soil loss by geostatistical methods with TM images and a slope map, *J Photo Engg Rem Sens* 69: 889-898
- Weber A, Fohrer N, Moller D (2001) Long term landuse changes in a mesoscale watershed due to socio-economic factors: effects on landscape structures and functions. *Ecol Model* 140:125–140
- Water and Energy Commission (1982) *Hydrological Studies of Nepal, Vol. I&II*. WEC, Ministry of Water Resource, HMG, Nepal
- White ME (1978) Reservoir surface area from Landsat imagery. *J Photo Engg Rem Sens* 11: 1421-1426
- Williams R (1975) Sediment yield prediction with USLE using run-off energy factor, In present and prospective technology for predicting sediment yields and sources. ARS-S-40, USDA, Washington DC: 244-252.
- Williams JR, Berndt HD (1977) Sediment yield prediction based on watershed hydrology. *Trans Am Soc Agric Engr* 20(6): 1100–1104
- Wischmeier WH, Smith DD (1978) *Predicting rainfall erosion losses- A guide to conservation planning*. USDA Handbook 537, Washington
- Work EAJr, Gilmer DS (1976) Utilization of satellite data for inventorying prairie ponds and lakes. *Photogrammetric Engineering & Remote Sensing* 42: 685-694
- Yoshino K, Ishioka Y (2005) Guidelines for soil conservation towards integrated basin management for sustainable development: a new approach based on the assessment of soil loss risk using remote sensing and GIS. *Paddy Water Environ* 3: 235-247
- Young RA, Onstad CA, Bosch DD, Anderson WP (1989) AGNPS: a nonpoint source pollution model for evaluating agricultural watersheds. *J Soil Water Conserv* 44(2):168–173
- Xevi EK, Christiaens A, Espino W, Sewanandan D, Mallants D, Sorensen H, Feyen J (1997) Calibration, validation and sensitivity analysis of MIKE-SHE model using Neuenkirchen Catchment Case Study. *Water Resour Manage* 11:219–242
- Zhang X (1999) *Remote sensing and GIS for modeling soil erosion at the global scale*, PhD Thesis, King Collage London, London UK.

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

The authors and team of Kodar PDS from WRD Raipur and NIH RC Bhopal are gratefully acknowledged their sincere thanks to Sri R.D Singh, Director National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee and Sri H.R. Kutare, Engineer in Chief, Water Resources Department, Govt. of Chhattisgarh for providing the opportunity to conduct this purpose driven study and all support during the PDS. The authors are extremely thankful to the PCS, TAMC and World Bank for funding the study, time to time monitoring and suggestions. We express our sincere thank to Dr. N. C. Ghosh, Coordinator RC Bhopal and Sri R. N. Divya, Chief Engineer, Mahanadi- Godavari Basin, WRD, Raipur (C.G.) for their technical/administrative support and time to time encouragement during the course of study. It is an opportunity to express our sincere thanks to Dr. Rakesh Kumar, Coordinator, HP II, Dr. C.P. Kumar, Coordinator, PDS studies and Dr. A.K. Lohani, Coordinator (Training) for their technical help, monitoring and suggestions. The authors wish to express their gratitude to Dr. Ashish Pandey, Astt. Professor, IIT Rrorkee for consultancy works in the PDS.

We are thankful to Dr. Vinay Paney, Professor, Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishvavidyalaya, Raipur for providing requisite data, technical inputs and Deptt. of Civil Engineering, National Institute of Technology, Raipur for soil testing. We would like to acknowledge the support of Sri T.R. Nayak, Sc-D and Head, RC Bhopal during the course of study. We wish to express our sincere thanks to Groundwater Division, WRD, Raipur for sediment testing works. We are thankful to Ku. Shilpi Chourasis, JRF for GIS related work and other field support. This PDS was an extensive field driven study and support of field staff for collection of samples, measurement, surveys and soil testing etc. At last but not the least, the authors of the PDS are thankful to the local people, NGOs and other govt. departments for their continuing support and other help during the course of study.

**PDS Study Group**

## PHOTOGRAPHS



**Pictorial view of Kodar Reservoir**



**Kodar Main canal**



**Field discussion of officers for works under PDS**



**Soil testing in the field**



**A view of gathering during PDS workshop on Dec 09, 2011 at Raipur**



**Presentation during PDS workshop on Dec 09, 2011**



**Inauguration of PDS workshop on June 28, 2013 at Raipur**



**Presentation on PDS deliverables during PDS workshop on June 28, 2013**





**Presentation on results of consultancy work by Dr. Ashish Pandey, IIT Roorkee**



**A view of gathering during PDS workshop on June 28, 2013**



**An interactive session during PDS workshop on June 28, 2013**



**Feedback session during PDS workshop on June 28, 2013**

 <p><b>National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee (Uttarakhand)</b></p>	 <p><b>Water Resources Department, Govt. of Chhattisgarh, Raipur (C.G.)</b></p>
Sri. R.D. Singh, Director, NIH, Roorkee Uttarakhand	Sri H.R. Kutare, Engineer in Chief, WRD, Raipur Chhattisgarh
Dr N.C. Ghosh, Sc-F & Coordinator, NIH Regional Centre Bhopal Sri T.R. Nayak, Sc-D & Head, NIH Regional Centre Bhopal	Sri R.N. Divya, Chief Engineer (MG Basin), WRD Raipur Chhattisgarh
<b>PDS STUDY GROUP</b>	
Sri R.K. Jaiswal, Sc-C NIH Regional Centre Bhopal (PI) Sri R.V. Galkate, Sc-D NIH Regional Centre (Key person) Sri T. Thomas, Scientist-C Regional Centre Bhopal (Co-PI) Dr. Surjeet Singh, Scientist-D, NIH, Roorkee Uttarakhand (Co-PI)	Sri S.K. Awadhiya, Superintending Engineer (PI) Sri D.K. Sonkusale, Deputy Director (Key Person) Sri Akhilesh Verma, Executive Engineer (Co-PI) Sri R.K. Sharma, Sub Divisional Officer (Co-PI) Sri R. Chandrakar, Sub Engineer (Co-PI) Sri J.K. Dass, Sub Engineer (Co-PI)